## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>What's in the box</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Function (Firmware Update)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update Information of the firmware</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operation of added new functions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Firmware Update Procedure</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part Names</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front Panel</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rear Panel</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remote Controller</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connections</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting speakers</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker Installation</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker Connections and &quot;Speaker Setup&quot; Settings</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker combinations</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting the TV</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To ARC TV</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To Non-ARC TV</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting Playback Devices</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting an AV Component with HDMI Jack Mounted</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting an AV Component without HDMI Jack Mounted</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room (Multi-zone Connection)</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting a TV (ZONE 2)</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier (ZONE 2)</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting ZONE B</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier, etc. (ZONE B)</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting Antennas</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Connection</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting External Control Devices</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR IN port</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12V TRIGGER OUT jack</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting the Power Cord</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playback</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AV Component Playback</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Operations</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLUETOOTH® Playback</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Operations</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet Radio</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spotify</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AirPlay®</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back on This Unit</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back on multiple devices (AirPlay2)</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DTS Play-Fi®</strong></td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FlareConnect™</strong></td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>USB Storage Device</strong></td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Operations</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device and Supported Format</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)</strong></td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Windows Media® Player settings</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Audio Formats</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Play Queue</strong></td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Setup</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adding Play Queue Information</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sort and Delete</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Amazon Music</strong></td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Registering This Unit with Amazon Music</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Amazon Music</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Connecting the Sonos System for Playback</strong></td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Necessary Equipment</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How to Connect This Unit and Sonos Connect</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Up</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Sonos on This Unit</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Listening To the AM/FM Radio</strong></td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuning into a Radio Station</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presetting a Radio Station</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Using RDS (Asian models)</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Multi-zone</strong></td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back (ZONE 2)</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back (ZONE 3)</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ZONE B Playback</strong></td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing Back</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Convenience functions</strong></td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Displaying Your Favorite Video on TV While Playing Music</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjusting the tone</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep Timer</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Listening Mode</strong></td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Selecting a Listening mode</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening Mode Effects</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Inputting Characters</strong></td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Setup

**Setup Menu**
- Menu list 128
- Menu operations 130
  - 1. Input/Output Assign 131
  - 2. Speaker 135
  - 3. Audio Adjust 141
  - 4. Source 143
  - 5. Hardware 145
  - 6. Multi Zone 152
  - 7. Miscellaneous 153

**Quick Menu**
- Menu operations 155

**Web Setup**
- Menu operations 157

**Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard**
- Operations 158

## Troubleshooting
- When the unit is operating erratically 162
- Troubleshooting 164

## Appendix

**Reducing the Power Consumption in Standby State** 173
**About HDMI** 174
**General Specifications** 176
What’s in the box

1. Main unit (1)
2. Remote controller (RC-972R) (1), Batteries (AAA/R03) (2)
3. Speaker setup microphone (1)
   - Used during Initial Setup.
4. Indoor FM antenna (1)
5. AM loop antenna (1)
6. Power cord (1)
   - Quick Start Guide (1)

*This is an online user manual. This is not supplied with the product.

- Connect speakers with an impedance of 4 Ω to 16 Ω.
- The power cord must be connected only after all other connections are completed.
- We will not accept any responsibility for damage arising from the connection with equipment manufactured by other companies.
- Network services and content that can be used may no longer be available if new functions are added by updating firmware or the service providers terminate their services. Also, available services may differ depending on your area.
- Details on the firmware update will be posted on our website and through other means at a later date.
- The illustrations in this manual use those of North American models unless otherwise mentioned.
- Specifications and appearance are subject to change without prior notice.
**Additional Function (Firmware Update)**

This unit is equipped with a function to update the firmware via network or USB port when the firmware update is announced after purchase. This enables various functions to be added and operations to be improved.

Depending on the manufacturing timing of the product, the firmware may be switched to the updated one. In such a case, new functions may be added from the start.

For how to confirm the latest firmware contents and the firmware version of your product, see the following section.

### Update Information of the firmware

For the latest firmware contents and the firmware version, visit our company's website. If the firmware version of your product differs from the latest one, it is recommended to update the firmware.

To confirm the firmware version of your product, press the button on the remote controller, and refer to "7. Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Version" (p153).

### Operation of added new functions

If functions are added or changed from contents described in the Instruction Manual, see the following reference.

**Supplementary Information**

- **Firmware Update Procedure (p7)**
Firmware Update Procedure

The update may take approx. 20 minutes to complete via network or via USB port. Existing settings are guaranteed in either updating method. When this unit is connected to the network, notifications of firmware updates may be displayed. To update the firmware, select "Update Now" with the cursor buttons of the remote controller and press ENTER. The unit automatically enters standby mode after "Completed!" is displayed, and the update is completed.

Disclaimer: The program and accompanying online documentation are furnished to you for use at your own risk. Our company will not be liable and you will have no remedy for damages for any claim of any kind whatsoever concerning your use of the program or the accompanying online documentation, regardless of legal theory, and whether arising in tort or contract.

In no event will our company be liable to you or any third party for any special, indirect, incidental, or consequential damages of any kind, including, but not limited to, compensation, reimbursement or damages on account of the loss of present or prospective profits, loss of data, or for any other reason whatsoever.

Updating the Firmware via Network

- While updating the firmware, do not do the following:
  - Disconnecting and reconnecting cables, USB storage device, speaker setup microphone or headphones, or performing operations on the unit such as turning the power off
  - Accessing this unit from a PC or smartphone using their applications
- Check that the unit is turned on, and the connection to the Internet is secured.
- Turn off control devices (PC etc.) connected to the network.
- Stop an Internet radio, USB storage device, or server content being played.
- If the multi-zone function is active, turn it off.
- If "HDMI CEC" is set to "On", set it to "Off".
- Press ⏯. Next, select "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" and press ENTER, then select "HDMI CEC" and select "Off".
- The descriptions may differ from the actual on-screen displays, however, operations and functions are the same.

Update

1. Press ⏯.
   The Setup menu is displayed on the TV screen.

2. Select "7. Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Update via NET" with the cursors in order, then press ENTER.

   * If "Firmware Update" is grayed out and cannot be selected, wait for a while until it starts up.
   * If there is no updatable firmware, "Update via NET" cannot be selected.

3. Press ENTER with "Update" selected, and start update.
   - During the update, the TV screen may go black depending on the program to be updated. In such a case, check the progress on the display of the unit. The TV screen will remain black until the update is completed and the power is turned on again.
   - When "Completed!" is displayed, the update is complete.
4. Press ON/STANDBY on the main unit to turn the unit into standby mode. The process is completed, and your firmware is updated to the latest version.
   • Do not use on the remote controller.

**If an Error Message is Displayed**
If an error occurs, "*-* Error!" is displayed on the display of the unit. ("*" represents an alphanumeric character.) Refer to the following descriptions and check.

**Error Code**
- *-01, *-10: LAN cable not found. Connect the LAN cable properly.
- *-02, *-03, *-04, *-05, *-11, *-13, *-14, *-16, *-17, *-18, *-20, *-21: Internet connection error. Check the following:
  – Whether the router is turned on
  – Whether this unit and the router are connected via the network
Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the router. This may solve the problem. If you are still unable to connect to the Internet, the DNS server or proxy server may be temporarily down. Check the server operation status with your Internet service provider.
- Others:
  After removing the power plug once, insert it to the outlet, and then start the operation from the beginning.

**Updating via USB**
- While updating the firmware, do not do the following:
  – Disconnecting and reconnecting cables, USB storage device, speaker setup microphone or headphones, or performing operations on the unit such as turning the power off
  – Accessing this unit from a PC or smartphone using their applications
- Prepare a 256 MB or larger USB storage device. The format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.
  – Media inserted into a USB card reader may not be used for this function.
  – USB storage devices equipped with the security function are not supported.
  – USB hubs and USB devices equipped with the hub function are not supported. Do not connect these devices to the unit.
- Delete any data stored on the USB storage device.
- Turn off control devices (PC etc.) connected to the network.
- Stop an Internet radio, USB storage device, or server content being played
- If the multi-zone function is active, turn it off.
- If "HDMI CEC" is set to "On", set it to "Off".
  – Press . Next, select "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" and press ENTER, then select "HDMI CEC" and select "Off".
  – Depending on the USB storage device or its content, long time may be required for loading, the content may not be loaded correctly, or power may not be supplied correctly.
  – Our company will not be liable whatsoever for any loss or damage of data, or storage failure arising from the use of the USB storage device. Please note this in advance.
  – The descriptions may differ from the actual on-screen displays, however, operations and functions are the same.

**Update**
1. Connect the USB storage device to your PC.
2. Download the firmware file from the our company's website to your PC and unzip.
   Firmware files are named as below.
   ONKAVR****_R****.zip
Unzip the file on your PC. The number of unzipped files and folders varies depending on the model.
3. Copy all unzipped files and folders to the root folder of the USB storage device.
   • Make sure to copy the unzipped files.
4. Connect the USB storage device to the USB port of this unit.
   • If an AC adapter is supplied with the USB storage device, connect the AC adapter, and use it with a household outlet.
   • If the USB storage device has been partitioned, each section will be treated as an independent device.
5. Press ⊗.
   The Setup menu is displayed on the TV screen.

6. Select "7. Miscellaneous" - "Firmware Update" - "Update via USB" with the cursors in order, then press ENTER.

   • If "Firmware Update" is grayed out and cannot be selected, wait for a while until it starts up.
   • If there is no updatable firmware, "Update via USB" cannot be selected.

7. Press ENTER with "Update" selected, and start update.
   • During the update, the TV screen may go black depending on the program to be updated. In such a case, check the progress on the display of the unit. The TV screen will remain black until the update is completed and the power is turned on again.
   • During the update, do not turn the power off, or disconnect or reconnect the USB storage device.
   • When "Completed!" is displayed, the update is complete.

8. Disconnect the USB storage device from the unit.

9. Press ⊗ ON/STANDBY on the main unit to turn the unit into standby mode.
   The process is completed, and your firmware is updated to the latest version.
   • Do not use ⊗ on the remote controller.

**If an Error Message is Displayed**
If an error occurs, "*-* Error!" is displayed on the display of the unit. ("*" represents an alphanumeric character.) Refer to the following descriptions and check.

**Error Code**
• *-01, *-10:
   The USB storage device cannot be recognized. Check if the USB storage device or USB cable is securely inserted to the USB port of the unit.
   Connect the USB storage device to an external power source if it has its own power supply.
• *-05, *-13, *-20, *-21:
   The firmware file is not present in the root folder of the USB storage device, or the firmware file is for another model. Retry from the download of the firmware file.
• Others:
   After removing the power plug once, insert it to the outlet, and then start the operation from the beginning.
Part Names

Front Panel

[Diagram of front panel with parts labeled 1 to 17.]

- For details, see (→p11)
1. ( ) ON/STANDBY button

2. MUSIC OPTIMIZER button/indicator (North American models): Turns on/off the MUSIC OPTIMIZER function that improves the quality of the compressed audio.

3. HYBRID STANDBY indicator: Lights up when any of the following functions is working or enabled in standby state of this unit. When this indicator is lighting, the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.
   - HDMI CEC (→p145)
   - HDMI Standby Through (→p145)
   - USB Power Out at Standby (→p150)
   - Network Standby (→p150)
   - Bluetooth Wakeup (→p150)

4. Remote control sensor: Receives signals from the remote controller.
   - The reception range of the remote controller is within a distance of approx. 16´/5 m, and an angle of 20° in vertical direction and 30° to right and left.

5. ZONE 2/ZONE 3 button: Controls the multi-zone function. (→p94)

6. QUICK MENU button: Pressing this button during playback can make settings such as "HDMI" and "Audio" quickly on the TV screen while playing. (→p155)

7. Display (→p12)

8. SETUP button: You can display advanced setting items on the TV and the display to have a more enjoyable experience with this unit. (→p128)

9. Cursor buttons (▲ / ▼ / ◄ / ►) and ENTER button: Select an item with the cursors, and press ENTER to confirm your selection. When using TUNER, use them to tune in to stations. (→p88)

10. RETURN button: Returns the display to the previous state while setting.

11. MASTER VOLUME

12. Press the LISTENING MODE button (above) to select a category from "Movie/TV", "Music" and "Game", and then turn the LISTENING MODE dial (below) to change the listening mode (→p101).

13. Adjusts the sound quality. Press the TONE button (above) to select an item to adjust from "Bass", "Vocal" and "Treble", and turn the TONE dial (below) to adjust. (→p99)

14. PHONES jack: Connect headphones with a standard plug (ø1/4″/6.3 mm).

15. Input selector buttons: Switches the input to be played.

16. SETUP MIC jack: Connect the supplied speaker setup microphone. (→p159)

17. AUX INPUT AUDIO/HDMI jack: Connect a video camera, etc. using a stereo mini plug cable (ø1/8″/3.5 mm) or HDMI cable. (→p56)
Display

1. Speaker/Channel display: Displays the output channel that corresponds to the selected listening mode.
2. Lights in the following conditions.
   - Headphones are connected.
   - Z2/Z3: ZONE 2/ZONE 3 is on.
   - \(^\d\): Connected by BLUETOOTH.
   - \(^\bullet\): Connected by Wi-Fi.
   - NET: Lights when connected to the network with the "NET" input selector. It will blink if incorrectly connected to the network.
   - USB: Lights when the "NET" input selector is selected, a USB device is connected and the USB input is selected. It will blink if the USB device is not properly connected.
   - HDMI: HDMI signals are input and the HDMI input is selected.
   - DIGITAL: Digital signals are input and the digital input is selected.
   - A: Audio in output only to ZONE A.
   - B: Audio is output only to ZONE B.
   - AB: Audio is output to both ZONE A and ZONE B.
3. Lights according to the type of input digital audio signal and the listening mode.
4. Lights in the following conditions.
   - RDS (Asian models): Receiving RDS broadcasting.
   - TUNED: Receiving AM/FM radio.
   - FM ST: Receiving FM stereo.
   - SLEEP: Sleep timer is set. (p149)
   - AUTO STBY: Auto Standby is set. (p149)
5. Blinks when muting is on.
6. Displays various information of the input signals.
   - “DialogNorm: X dB” (“X” is a numerical value) may be displayed when software recorded in Dolby lineage or DTS lineage audio formats is played. For example, if “DialogNorm: +4 dB” is displayed, the source being played is recorded with 4 dB plus the THX standard level. If you play it with the THX standard level, lower the volume by 4 dB.
7. This may light when operating with the "NET" input selector.
Reear Panel

For details, see (→ p14)
1. DIGITAL IN OPTICAL/COAXIAL jacks: Input TV or AV component digital audio signals with a digital optical cable or digital coaxial cable.
2. TUNER AM/FM terminal: Connect the supplied antennas.
3. COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks: Input AV component video signals with a component video cable. (Compatible only with 480i or 576i resolution.)
   VIDEO IN jacks: Input AV component video signals with an analog video cable.
4. Wireless antenna: Used for WI-Fi connection or when using a BLUETOOTH-enabled device. Adjust the angles according to the connection status.
5. HDMI OUT jacks: Transmit video signals and audio signals with an HDMI cable connected to a monitor such as a TV or projector.
6. RS-232 port: Connect a home control system equipped with an RS-232 port. For adopting a home control system, contact the specialized stores.
7. HDMI IN jacks: Transmit video signals and audio signals with an HDMI cable connected to an AV component.
8. ETHERNET port: Connect to the network with a LAN cable.
9. USB port: Connect a USB storage device to play music files. (p75) You can also supply power (5 V/1 A) to USB devices with a USB cable.
10. AC INLET: Connect the supplied power cord.
11. GND terminal: Connect the ground wire of the turntable.
12. AUDIO IN jacks: Input AV component audio signals with an analog audio cable.
13. 12V TRIGGER OUT jack: Connect a device equipped with a 12V trigger input jack to enable power link operation between the device and this unit. (p63)
14. IR IN port: Connect a remote control receiver unit. (p62)
15. SPEAKERS terminals: Connect speakers with speaker cables. (North American models support banana plugs. Use a plug 4 mm in diameter. Y plug connection is not supported.)
16. SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jacks: Connect a powered subwoofer with a subwoofer cable. Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected. The same signal is output from each SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack.
17. ZONE 2 LINE OUT jacks: Output audio signals with an analog audio cable connected to a pre-main amplifier in a separate room (ZONE 2).
   ZONE B LINE OUT jacks: Connect to a pre-main amplifier with an analog audio cable, and simultaneously output audio of the same source as that of the speakers (ZONE A) connected to this unit.
Remote Controller

1. ON/STANDBY button
2. Input selector buttons: Switches the input to be played.
3. Play buttons: Used for playback operations for the Music Server (p78) or USB device (p75). Also, switching to "CEC MODE" with "19. MODE button" allows you to operate an HDMI CEC function-enabled AV component. (Some devices may not be operated.)
4. Q (QUICK MENU) button: Pressing this button during playback allows you to make settings such as "HDMI" and "Audio" quickly on the TV screen while playing. (p155)
5. Cursor buttons and ENTER button: Select an item with the cursors, and press ENTER to confirm your selection. Pressing button allows you to switch the screen when a music folder list or file list is not displayed on one screen on the TV.
6. button: Displays advanced setting items on the TV or the display to have a more enjoyable experience with this unit. (p128)
7. TONE button: Adjusts the sound quality. (p99)
8. LISTENING MODE button: Selects a listening mode (p101).
9. DIMMER button: Switches the brightness of the display with three levels. It cannot be turned off completely.
10. ZONE 2/ZONE 3 SHIFT button: Used to control the multi-zone function (p93).
11. SLEEP button: Sets the sleep timer. Select the time from "30 min", "60 min" and "90 min". (p100)
12. HDMI MAIN/SUB button: Select the HDMI OUT jack to output video signals from "MAIN", "SUB", and "MAIN+SUB".
13. i button: Switches the information on the display and is used to operate RDS (p92). Also, when the "BLUETOOTH" input selector is selected, pressing and holding this button for 5 seconds or more will switch to the pairing mode.
14. button: Returns the display to the previous state while setting.
15. button: Temporarily mutes audio. Press the button again to cancel muting.
16. VOLUME buttons
17. CLEAR button: Deletes all characters you have entered when entering text on the TV screen.
18. MEMORY button: Used to register AM/FM radio stations. (p90)
19. MODE button: Switches between automatic tuning and manual tuning for AM/FM stations (p88). Also, when an HDMI CEC function-enabled AV component is connected to this unit, you can switch "3. Play buttons" between "CEC MODE" and "RCV MODE" (normal mode).
## Connections

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Connecting speakers</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting the TV</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting Playback Devices</td>
<td>53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Multi-zone Connection)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting ZONE B</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting Antennas</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Network Connection</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting External Control Devices</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting the Power Cord</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Connecting speakers

You can select the layout of speakers to be installed from various patterns when using this unit. Use the following flow chart to select the speaker layout that suits your speakers and usage environment. You can check the connection method and default settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use height speakers?</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **When using 1 set of Height Speakers**
  - 5.1.2 Channel System (→p44)
  - 5.1.2 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER (→p45)
  - 5.1.2 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers) (→p46)
  - 7.1.2 Channel System (→p47)

- **When using 2 sets of Height Speakers**
  - 5.1.4 Channel System (→p48)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

- 5.1 Channel System (→p38)
- 5.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER (→p39)
- 5.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers) (→p40)
- 7.1 Channel System (→p41)
- 7.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER (→p42)
- 7.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers) (→p43)
Speaker Installation

5.1 Channel System

This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. Front speakers output the front stereo sound, and a center speaker outputs the sound of the center of the screen, such as dialogs and vocals. Surround speakers create the back sound field. Powered subwoofer reproduces the bass sound, and creates the rich sound field. The front speakers should be positioned at ear height while the surround speakers should be positioned just above ear height. The center speaker should be set up facing the listening position at an angle. Placing the powered subwoofer between the center speaker and the front speaker gives you a natural sound even when playing music sources.

1, 2 Front Speakers
3 Center Speaker
4, 5 Surround Speakers
6 Powered Subwoofer

Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System (→p18) and added surround back speakers. Front speakers output the front stereo sound, and a center speaker outputs the sound of the center of the screen, such as dialogs and vocals. Surround speakers create the back sound field. Powered subwoofer reproduces the bass sound, and creates the rich sound field. Surround back speakers improves the sense of envelopment and connectivity of sound in the back sound field, and provides a more real sound field.

The front speakers should be positioned at ear height while the surround speakers should be positioned just above ear height. The center speaker should be set up facing the listening position at an angle. Placing the powered subwoofer between the center speaker and the front speaker gives you a natural sound even when playing music sources. The surround back speakers should be positioned at ear height.

- If surround back speakers are installed, be sure to install surround speakers as well.

1,2 Front Speakers
3 Center Speaker
4,5 Surround Speakers
6 Powered Subwoofer
7,8 Surround Back Speakers

### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
5.1.2 Channel System

A 5.1.2 Channel System is a speaker layout consisting of the basic 5.1 Channel System (→ p18) and added height speakers. Select the height speakers that suit your speakers and usage environment from the following three types.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers
  Installation Example (→ p21)

- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example
  (→ p22)

- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers)
  Installation Example (→ p23)
Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example

This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system (→ p18) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added front high speakers or rear high speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Front high speakers or rear high speakers should be installed at least 3’/0.9 m higher than the front speakers.

Front high speakers should be installed directly above the front speakers, and the distance between the rear high speakers should match the distance between the front speakers. In both cases, the speakers should be set up facing the listening position at an angle.

7,8 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
• Front High Speakers
• Rear High Speakers

Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→ p103)
Ceiling Speakers Installation Example

This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system (→p18) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added top front speakers or top middle speakers or top rear speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Install the top front speakers on the ceiling anterior to the seating position, top middle speakers on the ceiling directly above the seating position, and top rear speakers on the ceiling posterior to the seating position. The distance between each pair should match the distance between the front speakers.

- Dolby Laboratories recommends the setups of these types of height speakers to obtain the best Dolby Atmos effect.

7,8 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
- Top Front Speakers
- Top Middle Speakers
- Top Rear Speakers

Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
This is a system with the basic 5.1 channel system (~p18) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added Dolby enabled speakers (front) or Dolby enabled speakers (surround) combined. Dolby enabled speakers are special speakers designed to face the ceiling, so that the sound is heard from overhead by bouncing the sound off the ceiling. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Install them either on the front speakers or on the surround speakers.

7,8 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
• Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)
• Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)
7.1.2 Channel System

A 7.1.2 Channel System is a speaker layout consisting of the 7.1 Channel System (→p19) and added height speakers. Select the height speakers that suit your speakers and usage environment from the following three types.

- **Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers**
  Installation Example (→p25)

- **Ceiling Speakers Installation Example**
  (→p26)

- **Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers)**
  Installation Example (→p27)
Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers

Installation Example

This is a system with the 7.1 channel system (p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added front high speakers or rear high speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Front high speakers or rear high speakers should be installed at least 3’/0.9 m higher than the front speakers. Front high speakers should be installed directly above the front speakers, and the distance between the rear high speakers should match the distance between the front speakers. In both cases, the speakers should be set up facing the listening position at an angle.

9,10 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
• Front High Speakers
• Rear High Speakers

Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (p103)
This is a system with the 7.1 channel system (→p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added top front speakers or top middle speakers or top rear speakers combined. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Install the top front speakers on the ceiling anterior to the seating position, top middle speakers on the ceiling directly above the seating position, and top rear speakers on the ceiling posterior to the seating position. The distance between each pair should match the distance between the front speakers.

- Dolby Laboratories recommends the setups of these types of height speakers to obtain the best Dolby Atmos effect.

9,10 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
- Top Front Speakers
- Top Middle Speakers
- Top Rear Speakers

#### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers)

Installation Example

This is a system with the 7.1 channel system (→p19) consisting of front speakers, a center speaker, surround speakers, surround back speakers and a powered subwoofer, and added Dolby enabled speakers (front), Dolby enabled speakers (surround) or Dolby enabled speakers (surround back) combined. Dolby enabled speakers are special speakers designed to face the ceiling, so that the sound is heard from overhead by bouncing the sound off the ceiling. Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Install them either on the front speakers, on the surround speakers or on the surround back speakers.

9,10 Height Speakers
Choose one of the following:
• Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front)
• Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)
• Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround Back)

Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
5.1.4 Channel System

A 5.1.4 Channel System is a speaker layout combining 2 sets of the height speakers, 1 set of left and right at the front and 1 set of left and right at the rear, to the basic 5.1 Channel System (→p18). Installing the height speakers will enrich the sound field feeling in the upper space. Combination of 2 height speakers can be selected from following.

- Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front (→p29)
- Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front (→p31)
- Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front (→p32)
- Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front (→p34)
Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front

About the top front speakers

7, 8 Top Front Speakers

The top front speakers are installed on the ceiling at front of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers. When the top front speakers are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 3 examples shown at the right.

a: 30° to 55°

(Example 1) Use top rear speakers at the rear

b: 125° to 150°

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9, 10 Top Rear Speakers

Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
(Example 2) Use rear high speakers at the rear

The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

(Example 3) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

- Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
About the top middle speakers

The top middle speakers are installed on the ceiling immediately above the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers. When the top middle speakers are used in front, the rear high speakers in the figure at the right can be used at the rear.

7,8 Top Middle Speakers

The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

 Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front

About the front high speakers

Install the front high speakers immediately above the front speakers minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher, and tilted so they will point toward the listener. When the front high speakers are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 4 examples shown at the right.

7,8 Front High Speakers

(Example 1) Use rear high speakers at the rear

The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
(Example 2) Use top middle speakers at the rear

The top middle speakers are installed on the ceiling immediately above the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Middle Speakers

(Example 3) Use top rear speakers at the rear

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

9,10 Top Rear Speakers

(Example 4) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling. The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

- Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front

About the Dolby enabled speakers (front)

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (front) are installed on top of the front speakers. When the Dolby enabled speakers (front) are used in front, the combination of the height speakers at the rear can be selected from the following 3 examples shown at the right.

Example 1) Use top rear speakers at the rear

The top rear speakers are installed on the ceiling at rear of the listening position, and the width between the left and right speakers is optimal to match the one for the front speakers.

Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)
(Example 2) Use rear high speakers at the rear

The width between the rear high speakers should match the one for the front speakers, and they should be installed minimum of 3'/0.9 m higher than the front speakers, and tilted so they will point toward the listener.

9,10 Rear High Speakers

(Example 3) Use Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround) at the rear

The Dolby enabled speakers are the special speaker that the sound is emitted toward the ceiling, and have the effect the sound to come from above by reflecting the sound on the ceiling.

The Dolby enabled speakers (surround) are installed on top of the surround speakers.

9,10 Dolby Enabled Speakers (Surround)

-[Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)]
Speaker Connections and "Speaker Setup" Settings

Connections

(Note) Speaker Impedance
Connect speakers with an impedance of 4 Ω to 16 Ω. If any of the speakers to be connected has an impedance of 4 Ω or more and less than 6 Ω, set "Speaker Impedance" to "4ohms" for "Speaker Setup" in the Initial Setup section (p158). When setting "Speaker Impedance" from the Setup menu, press on the remote controller, and set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Speaker Impedance" (p136) to "4ohms".

Connect the Speaker Cables

Make correct connection between the unit’s jacks and speaker’s jacks (+ side to + side, and - side to - side) for each channel. If the connection is wrong, a bass sound will not be reproduced properly due to reverse phase. Twist the wires exposed from the tip of the speaker cable so that the wires do not stick out of the speaker terminal when connecting. If the exposed wires touch the rear panel, or the + side and – side wires touch each other, a malfunction may occur.
Connect the Subwoofer

Connect a powered subwoofer with this unit using a subwoofer cable. Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected. The same signal is output from each SUBWOOFER PRE OUT jack.
This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" (→p18).
5.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

MAIN ROOM: This is a basic 5.1 Channel System. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" (→p18).

ZONE 2/ZONE 3: You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3) while performing 5.1-ch playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Note that ZONE 3 output is not possible with the connection using a HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable, or digital optical cable.

"Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p159)

- Speaker Channels: 5.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2 or Zone 2/Zone 3
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value (→p36)

Setup
When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/ Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.
You can configure a 5.1 Channel System (→p18) by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

**Speaker Setup** settings during Initial Setup (→p159)
- Speaker Channels: 5.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/Preout: Set any value (→p136)
- Bi-Amp: Yes
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value (→p36)
This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System and added surround back speakers. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" (→p19).
7.1 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

MAIN ROOM: This is a 7.1 Channel System that consists of the basic 5.1 Channel System and added surround back speakers. For details of the speaker layout, refer to "Speaker Installation" (→p19).

ZONE 2: You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

"Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p159)

- Speaker Channels: 7.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: Zone 2
- Zone 2 Lineout (Preout): Zone 2
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value (→p36)

Setup
When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.
7.1 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)

You can configure a 7.1 Channel System (→p19) by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

"Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p159)

- Speaker Channels: 7.1 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/Preout: Set any value (→p136)
- Bi-Amp: Yes
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value (→p36)
### 5.1.2 Channel System

This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- **Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example** (→p21)
- **Ceiling Speakers Installation Example** (→p22)
- **Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example** (→p23)

**Speaker Setup** settings during Initial Setup (→p159)

- **Speaker Channels**: 5.1.2 ch
- **Subwoofer**: Yes
- **Height 1 Speaker**: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- **Height 2 Speaker**: ---
- **Zone Speaker**: No
- **Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout)**: Set any value (→p136)
- **Bi-Amp**: No
- **Speaker Impedance**: Set any value (→p36)
5.1.2 Channel System + ZONE SPEAKER

**MAIN ROOM:** This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example (→p21)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example (→p22)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example (→p23)

**ZONE 2:** You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

"Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p159)

- **Speaker Channels:** 5.1.2 ch
- **Subwoofer:** Yes
- **Height 1 Speaker:** ---
- **Height 2 Speaker:** Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- **Zone Speaker:** Zone 2
- **Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout):** Zone 2
- **Bi-Amp:** No
- **Speaker Impedance:** Set any value (→p36)

**Setup**
When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.
5.1.2 Channel System (Bi-Amping the Speakers)

This is a combination of the 5.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example (→p21)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example (→p22)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example (→p23)

You can configure a 5.1.2 Channel System by connecting front speakers that support Bi-Amping connection. The Bi-Amping connection can improve the quality of the low and high pitched ranges. Be sure to remove the jumper bar connecting between the woofer jacks and tweeter jacks of the Bi-Amping supported speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers as well.

"Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p159)

- Speaker Channels: 5.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: ---
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value (→p136)
- Bi-Amp: Yes
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value (→p36)
7.1.2 Channel System

This is a combination of the 7.1 Channel System and front high speakers. A front high speaker is a type of height speaker. You can select only one set of height speakers from the following three types for connection.

- Front High Speakers/Rear High Speakers Installation Example (→p25)
- Ceiling Speakers Installation Example (→p26)
- Dolby Enabled Speakers (Dolby Speakers) Installation Example (→p27)

"Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p159)

- Speaker Channels: 7.1.2 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: ---
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value (→p136)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value (→p36)
5.1.4 Channel System

This is an example of combining the top middle speakers at the front and the rear high speakers at the rear to the 5.1 Channel System. The height speakers in front can be selected from following 4 types. The height speakers that can be combined at the rear differ depending on the height speakers used at the front.

- Combination example when Top Front Speakers are used at the front (→p23)
- Combination example when Top Middle Speakers are used at the front (→p31)
- Combination example when Front High Speakers are used at the front (→p32)
- Combination example when Dolby Enabled Speakers (Front) are used at the front (→p34)

"Speaker Setup" settings during Initial Setup (→p159)

- Speaker Channels: 5.1.4 ch
- Subwoofer: Yes
- Height 1 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Height 2 Speaker: Select the type of height speaker actually installed.
- Zone Speaker: No
- Zone 2 Lineout/(Preout): Set any value (→p136)
- Bi-Amp: No
- Speaker Impedance: Set any value (→p36)
### Speaker combinations

- Up to two powered subwoofers can be connected in either combination.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Speaker Channels</th>
<th>FRONT</th>
<th>CENTER</th>
<th>SURROUND</th>
<th>SURROUND BACK</th>
<th>HEIGHT 1</th>
<th>HEIGHT 2</th>
<th>Bi-AMP (*)</th>
<th>ZONE 2 (*)</th>
<th>ZONE 3 (*)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.1 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.2 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.2 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.2 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1.2 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1.2 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1.4 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1.4 ch</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) The Bi-AMP and ZONE speakers cannot be used simultaneously.
(2) When using the ZONE 2 speakers, it is necessary to connect the height speakers to the SURROUND BACK terminal.
(3) When using the Bi-AMP speakers, it is necessary to connect the Bi-AMP speakers to the HEIGHT 1 terminals, and the height speaker to the SURROUND BACK terminals.

#### About the HEIGHT 1/HEIGHT 2

When connecting 2 sets of the height speakers, the combination of the height speakers that can be selected is as follows.
- Height 1 Speaker: Top Middle, Height 2 Speaker: Rear High
- Height 1 Speaker: Front High; Height 2 Speaker: One of Rear High/Top Middle/Top Rear/Dolby Enabled Speaker (Surround)
- Height 1 Speaker: Top Front or Dolby Enabled Speaker (Front), Height 2 Speaker: One of Rear High/Top Rear/Dolby Enabled Speaker (Surround)

When only 1 set of the height speakers is connected, 1 from the height speakers types can be selected.
Connecting the TV

Connect this unit between a TV and AV component. Connecting this unit with the TV can output the video and audio signals of the AV component to the TV, or play the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection with the TV differs depending on whether the TV supports the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function or not. The ARC function transmits the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. To check if the TV supports the ARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.

Does your TV support the ARC function?

Yes
• To ARC TV (→p51)

No
• To Non-ARC TV (→p52)
To ARC TV

If the TV supports the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function (*), use only the HDMI cable to connect with the TV. Use the ARC-compatible HDMI IN jack of the TV for connection. You connect the HDMI cable to the port labeled OUT on the receiver side.

• Another TV or projector can be connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack. Switch between MAIN and SUB using the HDMI MAIN/SUB button on the remote controller (→p15) or "Quick Menu" (→p155). Note that this jack is not ARC-compatible.

• If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution.

• If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label.

Setup

• Settings are required to use the ARC function. Select "Yes" for "4. ARC Setup" in Initial Setup (→p158). If "No, Skip" is selected, settings are required in the Setup menu after Initial Setup is completed. Press  on the remote controller, and set "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" - "Audio Return Channel" to "On". (→p146)

• For detailed settings for TV connection, CEC function and audio output, refer to the instruction manual of the TV.

(*) ARC function: Transmits the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection to an ARC-compatible TV is complete with one HDMI cable. To check if the TV supports the ARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.

a HDMI cable
To Non-ARC TV

If the TV does not support the ARC (Audio Return Channel) function (*), connect an HDMI cable and digital optical cable. If the TV does not have a DIGITAL OPTICAL OUT jack, you can use an analog audio cable to connect with the AUDIO IN TV jack.

- If you use a cable set-top box, etc. connected to the input jack of this unit to watch TV (without using a TV’s built-in tuner), connection with a digital optical cable or analog audio cable is not required.
- Another TV or projector can be connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack. Switch between MAIN and SUB using the HDMI MAIN/SUB button on the remote controller (→p15) or "Quick Menu" (→p155). Note that this jack is not ARC-compatible.
- If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution.
- If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label.

(*) ARC function: Transmits the audio signals of the TV via an HDMI cable, and plays the audio of the TV on this unit. Connection to an ARC-compatible TV is complete with one HDMI cable. To check if the TV supports the ARC function, refer to the instruction manual of the TV, etc.

---

a: HDMI cable, b: Digital optical cable
Connecting Playback Devices

Connecting an AV Component with HDMI Jack Mounted

This is a connection example of an AV component equipped with an HDMI jack. When connecting with an AV component that conforms to the CEC (Consumer Electronics Control) standard, you can use the HDMI CEC function (*) that enables linking with input selectors, etc. and the HDMI Standby Through function that can transmit video and audio signals of the AV component to the TV even if this unit is in standby mode.

• If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label.

Setup

• The HDMI CEC function and HDMI Standby Through function are automatically enabled if you select "Yes" for "4. ARC Setup" in Initial Setup (→p158). If "No, Skip" is selected, settings are required in the Setup menu after Initial Setup is completed. Press on the remote controller, and select "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" to make the settings. (→p145)

• To enjoy digital surround sound including Dolby Digital, set the audio output of the connected Blu-ray Disc player etc. to the Bitstream output.

(*) The HDMI CEC function: This function enables various linking operations with CEC-compliant devices, such as switching input selectors interlocking with a CEC-compliant player, switching audio output between TV and this unit or adjusting the volume using the remote controller of a CEC-compliant TV, and automatically switching this unit to standby when the TV is turned off.

a HDMI cable
Connecting an AV Component without HDMI Jack Mounted

This is a connection example of an AV component unequipped with an HDMI jack. Select cables that match the jacks of the AV component for connection. For example, when video input is connected to the BD/DVD jack, connect the audio input to BD/DVD jack, too. Thus, video input jacks and audio input jacks should have the same name for connection. Note that video signals input to the VIDEO IN jack or the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jack are converted to HDMI video signals, and then output from the HDMI OUT jack.

- To enjoy digital surround playback in formats such as Dolby Digital, you need to make a connection for audio signals with a digital coaxial cable or a digital optical cable.
- According to the illustration, changing the input assignment (p133) enables connection to jacks other than the BD/DVD jack.

**Setup**

- The COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks are compatible only with 480i or 576i resolution. When connecting to the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks, set the output resolution of the player to 480i or 576i. If there is no option such as 480i, select interlace. If your player does not support 480i or 576i output, use the VIDEO IN jack.
- To enjoy digital surround sound including Dolby Digital, set the audio output of the connected Blu-ray Disc player etc. to the Bitstream output.

**a** Digital coaxial cable, **b** Analog audio cable, **c** Component video cable
Connecting an Audio Component

This is a connection example of an audio component. Connect a CD player using an analog audio cable. You can also connect a turntable that has an MM-type cartridge to the PHONO jack.

- If the turntable has a built-in phono equalizer, connect it to any of the AUDIO IN jacks other than the PHONO jack. Further, if the turntable uses an MC type cartridge, install a phono equalizer compatible with the MC type cartridge between the unit and the turntable, and then connect it to any of the AUDIO IN jacks other than the PHONO jack.

If the turntable has a ground wire, connect it to the GND terminal of this unit.

![Diagram of connections]

a Analog audio cable
**Connecting a Video Camera, etc.**

Connect a video camera, etc. to the AUX INPUT AUDIO/HDMI jack on the front panel using an HDMI cable or stereo mini plug cable (ø1/8 "/3.5 mm).
Connecting an AV Component in a Separate Room (Multi-zone Connection)

Connecting a TV (ZONE 2)

While a disc is played on a Blu-ray Disc player in the main room (where this unit is located), you can play the video and audio of the same Blu-ray Disc player or another AV component on the TV equipped with an HDMI IN jack in a separate room (ZONE 2). The TV in the separate room can play only the video of devices connected to the HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks of this unit.

- Audio from an externally connected AV component can be output only when the audio is 2ch PCM audio signal. Also, the audio output of the AV component may need to be changed to the PCM output.

Setup
- When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→ p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.
Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier (ZONE 2)

You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). Use an analog cable to connect the ZONE 2 LINE OUT jack of this unit and the LINE IN jack of the pre-main amplifier in the separate room. The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms.

- To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 2, connect it to any of HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks. If the AV component is not equipped with an HDMI jack, use a digital coaxial cable, digital optical cable or analog audio cable. Also, the audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2ch PCM signal.

When the AV component is connected to this unit with a digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.

Setup
- Settings are required to output audio to ZONE 2. Press on the remote controller, and set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" (→p136) to "Zone 2".

a Analog audio cable
Connecting ZONE B

Connecting a Pre-main Amplifier, etc. (ZONE B)

While performing playback through speakers (ZONE A) connected to the unit, you can enjoy the audio of the same source at the same time with the pre-main amplifier or the transmitter of the wireless headphones connected to the ZONE B LINE OUT jack. Use an analog audio cable to connect the ZONE B LINE OUT jack of this unit and the LINE IN jack of the pre-main amplifier or the transmitter of the wireless headphones.

Press the Q button on the remote controller for playback, and select the audio output destination on the Quick menu. (→p97)

Setup
- Settings are required to output audio to ZONE B. Press on the remote controller, and set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" (→p136) to "Zone B".

a Analog audio cable
Connecting Antennas

Connect the antenna to this unit, and set up the antenna at the best position for listening while receiving radio signals. Attach the indoor FM antenna to the wall using push pins or adhesive tape.

- a Indoor FM antenna
- b AM loop antenna

(North American models) (Asian models)
Network Connection

This unit can be connected to the network using a wired LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN). You can enjoy network functions such as Internet radio by network connection. If connection is made by the wired LAN, connect the router and the ETHERNET jack with the LAN cable as shown in the illustration. To connect by Wi-Fi, select "Wireless" for "5. Network Connection" in Initial Setup (p160), select your desired setting method, and then follow the on-screen instructions. To configure the setting on the Setup menu after the completion of Initial Setup, press the button on the remote controller, and select "5. Hardware" - "Network" to make the setting. (p146) For the Wi-Fi connection, stand the wireless antenna for use.

a LAN cable
Connecting External Control Devices

IR IN port

When connecting a remote control receiver unit consisting of an IR Receiver, etc. to this unit, operation using the remote controller is possible even if the remote control signal is difficult to reach (due to installation in the cabinet, etc.). You can also operate the unit using the remote controller from a separate room such as ZONE 2. For adopting a remote control receiver unit, contact the specialized stores.

- For the type of cable required for connection, refer to the operation manual, etc. of the remote control receiver unit.
12V TRIGGER OUT jack

When connecting a device equipped with a TRIGGER IN jack such as a BD/DVD player to this unit, the device can be turned on or set to standby by interlocking the operation on this unit. When any input is selected, this unit outputs a maximum of 12 V/100 mA control signal from the 12V TRIGGER OUT jack, and controls the power link operation of the external device.

- For connection, use a monaural mini plug cable (ø1/8"/3.5 mm) without resistance. Do not use a stereo mini plug cable.
Connecting the Power Cord

Connect the power cord after all the connections are completed.
- This model includes a removable power cord. Be sure to connect the power cord to the AC INLET of the unit first, and then connect it to the outlet. Always disconnect the outlet side first when disconnecting the power cord.

a Power cord
## Playback

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AV Component Playback</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BLUETOOTH® Playback</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet Radio</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spotify</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AirPlay®</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS Play-Fi®</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FlareConnect™</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB Storage Device</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play Queue</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon Music</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting the Sonos System for Playback</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening To the AM/FM Radio</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-zone</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZONE B Playback</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convenience functions</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening Mode</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inputting Characters</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AV Component Playback

You can play the audio from AV components, such as Blu-ray disc players through this unit.

- When a TV is connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack, use the HDMI MAIN/SUB button or "Quick Menu" (→p155) to switch between MAIN and SUB.

Basic Operations

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Press the input selector whose name is the same as that of the jack to which the player is connected.
   
   For example, press BD/DVD to play the player connected to the BD/DVD jack. Press TV to listen to the sound of the TV. Also, to play a device connected to the AUX INPUT AUDIO/HDMI jack on the front panel, press AUX.
   
   - When the CEC link function works, the input switches automatically when a CEC compliant TV or player is connected to this unit using HDMI connection.
3. Start play on the AV component.
BLUETOOTH® Playback

You can wirelessly play the audio on a BLUETOOTH-enabled device, such as a smartphone.

Basic Operations

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

Pairing

1. When you press the BLUETOOTH button, "Now Pairing..." appears on the display, and the pairing mode is enabled.

   Now Pairing...

2. Enable (turn on) the BLUETOOTH function of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, and then select this unit from among the devices displayed. If a password is requested, enter "0000".
   - This unit is displayed as "Onkyo TX-NR797 XXXXXX". This display can be changed using the Friendly Name function (→p147) or Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™).
   - To connect another BLUETOOTH-enabled device, press and hold the button at least 5 seconds, and then perform step 2. This unit can store the pairing information of up to 8 paired devices.
   - The coverage area is approx. 48´/15 m. Note that connection is not always guaranteed with all BLUETOOTH-enabled devices.

Playing Back

1. Perform the connection procedure on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.
2. Playing the music file.
   - The input on this unit automatically switches to "BLUETOOTH".
   - Turn up the volume of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device to an appropriate level.
   - Due to the characteristics of BLUETOOTH wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.
## Internet Radio

By connecting this unit to an Internet-connected network, you can enjoy Internet radio services such as TuneIn Radio.

- To play Internet radio services, the network needs to be connected to the Internet.
- Depending on the Internet radio service, a user registration may be required on your PC beforehand. For details of each service, visit the website of each service.

### Playing Back

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.
1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Pressing NET will display the Network Functions list screen on the TV.
3. Select your preferred Internet radio service using cursor, and press ENTER to confirm the selection.
4. Following the on-screen instructions, select a radio station and program using cursor, and then press ENTER to play.
   - To return to the previous screen, press RETURN.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TV's REMOTE</th>
<th>TV's REMOTE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Inputs" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Inputs" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Inputs" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Inputs" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Inputs" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Inputs" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Inputs" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Inputs" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Outputs" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Outputs" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The illustration shows an image.
Internet Radio Service Menu

You can bookmark specific stations, or delete stations that have been bookmarked. The displayed menu varies according to the service being selected. The menu icon ☑ is displayed while a station is being played. When only this icon is displayed, pressing ENTER will display the menu on the screen. When multiple icons are displayed, select the ☑ icon with the cursor, and press ENTER.

Regarding the TuneIn Radio Account

If you create an account on the TuneIn Radio website (tunein.com), and log in from this unit, your favorite radio stations or programs you have followed on the website are automatically added to your "My Presets" on this unit. "My Presets" is displayed on the next level in the hierarchical structure of TuneIn Radio. To display a radio station added to "My Presets", you need log into TuneIn Radio from the unit. To log in, select "Login" - "I have a TuneIn account" in the "TuneIn Radio" top list on the unit, and then enter your user name and password.

- If you select "Login" on this unit, a registration code is displayed. By using this code, you can associate the device on the My Page section of the TuneIn Radio website so that you can log in from "Login" - "Login with a registration code" without entering the user name and password.
Use your phone, tablet or computer as a remote control for Spotify. Go to spotify.com/connect to learn how.
AirPlay®

By connecting this unit to the same network as that of iOS devices such as iPhone®, iPod touch® and iPad®, you can enjoy music files on iOS devices wirelessly.

• Update the OS version on your iOS device to the latest version.
• Depending on the iOS version, operation screens or operation procedures on the iOS device may be different. For details, refer to the operating instructions for the iOS device.

Playing Back on This Unit

1. Connect the iOS device to the access point where this unit is connected via network.
2. Tap the AirPlay icon on the play screen of the music play application on the iOS device, and select this unit from the displayed devices.
3. Play the music file on the iOS device.
   • When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (p150) is set to On.
   • Due to the characteristics of AirPlay wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the AirPlay-enabled device.

You can also play the music files on a PC with iTunes (Vere. 10.2 or later) equipped. Confirm that this unit and the PC are connected to the same network beforehand. Then, press NET on this unit. Next, click the AirPlay icon in iTunes, select this unit from the displayed devices, and start play of a music file.
Playing Back on multiple devices (AirPlay2)

This unit supports AirPlay2. If the version of the iOS device is iOS11.4 or later, you can play the music of the iOS device on this unit and other devices that support AirPlay2.

1. Connect the iOS device to the access point where this unit is connected via network.

2. Tap the AirPlay icon 🎵 on the play screen of the music play application on the iOS device, and select this unit and AirPlay2-supported devices to play from the displayed devices.
   - AirPlay2-supported devices are displayed with white circle on the right side.
   - Multiple AirPlay2-supported devices can be selected.
   - The volume can be adjusted on individual devices.

3. Play the music file on the iOS device.
   - When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (→p150) is set to On.
   - Due to the characteristics of AirPlay wireless technology, the sound produced on this unit may slightly be behind the sound played on the AirPlay-enabled device.

You can also play the music files on a PC with iTunes (Vere. 12.8 or later) equipped. Confirm that this unit and the PC are connected to the same network beforehand. Then, press NET on this unit. Next, click the AirPlay icon 🎵 in iTunes, select this unit and AirPlay2-supported devices to play from the displayed devices, and start play of a music file.
When connecting this unit to the same network as mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can enjoy music played on the mobile device wirelessly. Music from a streaming distribution service or music in the music library on a mobile device can be played. This function also supports a playlist on iTunes. Also, connecting multiple speakers supporting DTS Play-Fi on the same network will enable "Group playback" that plays the same music in separate rooms at home. To enjoy this function, download Onkyo Music Control App (available on iOS or Android™).

Playing Back

1. Download Onkyo Music Control App using your mobile device.
http://www.onkyo.com/playfi/app_o.html

2. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
3. Starting up Onkyo Music Control App will automatically display compatible devices.
4. Select this device from the compatible devices. Then, a list of applications such as a music streaming distribution service is displayed. Select the content to play, and perform operation according to the on-screen instructions.
   - When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (→p150) is set to On.
   - For detailed operation and FAQ, visit the following URL.
   http://www.onkyo.com/playfi/info_o.html
   - To use a music streaming distribution service, user registration may be required.
   - This unit does not support the following DTS Play-Fi functions.
     - Spotify
     - Wireless Surround Sound
     - Line In Rebroadcast
     - Internet Radio
     - Critical Listening
     - L/R Stereo Speaker Pairing
   - Some of the settings in the "Setup menu" cannot be changed on this unit. To change those settings, cancel the connection of this unit from the application.
   - Listening modes cannot be selected during playback.
When downloading Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™) to mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can enjoy the group playback that plays the same music on multiple audio products supporting the FlareConnect function. You can play audio from external playback devices connected to each product, music from an Internet radio or network audio service such as a music streaming distribution service, and music in the music library on a mobile device.

**Playing Back**

1. Connect this unit and other devices supporting FlareConnect to the same network.
2. Download Onkyo Controller from App Store or Google Play™ Store.
3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
4. Starting up Onkyo Controller will automatically recognize compatible devices.
5. Select the screen of the compatible device to operate, and tap the Group icon at the bottom of the screen.
6. Add a check mark for the audio product on which you want to play the same music.
7. Select the content to play, and operate according to the on-screen instructions.
   - When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (p150) is set to On. For other devices, check their respective instruction manuals.
You can play music files stored on a USB storage device.

**Basic Operations**

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Plug your USB storage device containing music files into the USB port of this unit's rear panel.
3. Press NET to display the network service list screen.
4. Select "USB" with the cursors, and then press ENTER.
   - If the "USB" indicator blinks on the display, check whether the USB storage device is plugged in properly.
   - Do not unplug the USB storage device while "Connecting..." is being displayed on the display. This may cause data corruption or malfunction.
5. Press ENTER on the next screen again. The list of folders and music files on the USB storage device is displayed. Select the folder with the cursors, and press ENTER to confirm your selection.
6. Select the music file with the cursors, and then press ENTER to start playback.
• To return to the previous screen, press ➔.
• To display an album title, artist name and album art of a file in WAV format, make the folder structure and file names as shown below when saving music files. The album art can be displayed by saving a .jpg file to display on the screen in the folder of bottom level. Note that a large volume of .jpg file may take time to be displayed, or may not be displayed.

```
Folder 1  
  Artist name

Folder 1-1  
  Album name
  file 1-1  
  file 2-1  
  file 3-1  
  ...
  .jpg file

Folder 1-2  
  Album name
  ...
  ...
  .jpg file
```

• Characters that cannot be displayed on this unit appear with "＊"
• The USB port of this unit complies with the USB 2.0 standard. The transfer speed may be insufficient for some content you play, and sound interruptions, etc. may occur.
• Note that operation is not always guaranteed for all USB storage devices.
• This unit can use USB storage devices that comply with the USB mass storage class standard. Also the format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.

☑ Device and Supported Format ( →p77)
Device and Supported Format

USB Storage Device Requirements

- This unit can use USB storage devices that comply with the USB mass storage class standard.
- The format of USB storage devices supports FAT16 or FAT32 file system format.
- If the USB storage device has been partitioned, each section will be treated as an independent device.
- Up to 20,000 tracks per folder are supported, and folders can be nested up to 16 levels deep.
- USB hubs and USB storage devices with hub functions are not supported. Do not connect these devices to the unit.
- USB storage devices with security functions are not supported on this unit.
- If an AC adapter is supplied with the USB storage device, connect the AC adapter, and use it with a household outlet.
- Media inserted to the USB card reader may not be available in this function. Furthermore, depending on the USB storage device, proper reading of the contents may not be possible.
- In use of a USB storage device, our company accepts no responsibility whatsoever for the loss or modification of data stored on a USB storage device, or malfunction of the USB storage device. We recommend that you back up the data stored on a USB storage device before using it with this unit.

Supported Audio Formats

This unit supports the following music file formats. Note that sound files that are protected by copyright cannot be played on this unit.

MP3 (.mp3/.MP3):
- Supported formats: MPEG-1/MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

WMA (.wma/.WMA):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 5 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR
- WMA Pro/Voice/WMA Lossless formats are not supported.

WAV (.wav/.WAV):
- WAV files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.
  - Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
  - Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

AIFF (.aiff/.AIFF/.AIF):
- AIFF files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.
  - Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
  - Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

WMA (.wma/.WMA):
- Supported formats: MPEG-2/MPEG-4 Audio
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

FLAC (.flac/.FLAC):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

Apple Lossless (.m4a/.mp4/.M4A/.MP4):
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

DSD (.dsf/.dff/.DSF/.DFF):
- Supported formats: DSF/DSDIFF
- Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz, 5.6 MHz, 11.2 MHz
- When playing files recorded with VBR (Variable bit-rate), the playback time may not be displayed correctly.
- This unit supports the gapless playback of the USB storage device in the following conditions.
  When continuously playing WAV, FLAC and Apple Lossless files with the same format, sampling frequency, the number of channels and quantization bit rate.
Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)

Streaming play of music files stored on PCs or NAS devices connected to the same network as this unit is supported.

- The network servers supported by this unit are PCs that incorporate players equipped with the server functions such as Windows Media® Player 11 or 12, or NASes supporting the home network function. When using Windows Media® Player 11 or 12, you need to make the settings beforehand. Note that with PCs, only music files registered in the library of Windows Media® Player can be played.

Windows Media® Player settings

On Windows Media® Player11

1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 11.
2. In the “Library” menu, select “Media Sharing” to display a dialog box.
3. Select the “Share my media” check box, and then click “OK” to display the compatible devices.
4. Select this unit, and then click “Allow”.
   - When it is clicked, the corresponding icon is checked.
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog.
   - Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

On Windows Media® Player12

1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
2. In the "Stream" menu, select "Turn on media streaming" to display a dialog box.
   - If the media streaming is already turned on, select "More streaming options..." in the "Stream" menu to display the list of playback devices in the network, and then go to step 4.
3. Click "Turn on media streaming" to display the list of playback devices in the network.
4. Select this unit in "Media streaming options" and check that it is set to "Allow".
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog.
   - Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

Playing Back (→p79)
Playing Back

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.
1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Start the server (Windows Media® Player 11, Windows Media® Player 12, or NAS device) containing the music files to play.
3. Make sure that the PC or NAS is properly connected to the same network as this unit.
4. Press NET to display the network service list screen.
   - If the "NET" indicator on the display blinks, the unit is not properly connected to the network. Check the connection.
5. With the cursors, select "Music Server", and then press ENTER.
6. Select the target server with the cursors, and press ENTER to display the items list screen.
   • This unit cannot access pictures and videos stored on servers.
   • Depending on the server sharing settings, contents stored on the server may not be displayed.
7. With the cursors, select the music file to play, and then press ENTER to start playback.
   • If "No Item" is displayed on the screen, check whether the network is properly connected.
   • To return to the previous screen, press ⇩.
   • For music files on a server, up to 20,000 tracks per folder are supported, and folders can be nested up to 16 levels deep.
   • Depending on the type of media server, the unit may not recognize it, or may not be able to play its music files.

Searching music files to select
If the server you use supports search functions, the following search function can be used.
Perform the following procedure with available servers displayed using Music Server.
1. With ▲ / ▼, select the server containing music files you want to play, and select ENTER.
2. With ▲ / ▼, select the Search folder, and press ENTER. The Search folder contains the following three folders.
   • "Search by Artist": Select this when searching by artist name.
   • "Search by Album": Select this when searching by album title.
   • "Search by Track": Select this when searching by track title.
3. With ▲ / ▼, select the folder, and press ENTER.
4. Input a character string to search for, and press ENTER. Then, the search result is displayed.
5. With ▲ / ▼, select the music files to play, and select ENTER.

Controlling Remote Playback from a PC
You can use this unit to play music files stored on your PC by operating the PC in your home network. The unit supports remote playback via Windows Media® Player 12. To use the remote playback function of this unit with Windows Media® Player 12, it must be configured beforehand.

Setting PC
1. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
2. In the "Stream" menu, select "Turn on media streaming" to display a dialog box.
   • If the media streaming is already turned on, select "More streaming options..." in the "Stream" menu to display the list of playback devices in the network, and then go to step 4.
3. Click "Turn on media streaming" to display the list of playback devices in the network.
4. Select this unit in "Media streaming options" and check that it is set to "Allow".
5. Click "OK" to close the dialog box.
6. Open the "Stream" menu and confirm that "Allow remote control of my Player..." is checked.
   • Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

Remote playback
1. Turn on the power of the unit.
2. Turn on your PC, and start Windows Media® Player 12.
3. Select and right-click the music file to play with Windows Media® Player 12.
   • To remotely play a music file on another server, open the target server from "Other Libraries", and select the music file to play.
4. Select this unit in "Play to" to open the "Play to" window of Windows Media® Player 12, and start playback on this unit.
   • If your PC is running on Windows® 8.1, click "Play to", and select this unit.
   • If your PC is running on Windows® 10, click "Cast to Device", and select this unit. Operations during remote playback are possible from the "Play to" window on the PC. The playback screen is displayed on the HDMI-connected TV.
5. Adjust the volume using the volume bar on the "Play to" window.
   • Sometimes, the volume displayed on the remote playback window may differ from the volume displayed on the display of this unit.
   • When the volume is changed on this unit, the value is not reflected in the "Play to" window.
   • This unit cannot play music files remotely in the following conditions.
     – It is using a network service.
     – It is playing a music file on a USB storage device.
• Depending on the version of Windows Media® Player, the names of items to select may differ from the above description.

☑ Supported Audio Formats (→p82)
Supported Audio Formats

This unit supports the following music file formats. Remote play of FLAC and DSD is not supported.

**MP3 (.mp3/.MP3):**
- Supported formats: MPEG-1/MPEG-2 Audio Layer 3
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

**WMA (.wma/.WMA):**
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 5 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR
- WMA Pro/Voice/WMA Lossless formats are not supported.

**WAV (.wav/.WAV):**
WAV files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

**AIFF (.aiff/.AIFF/.AIF):**
AIFF files contain uncompressed PCM digital audio.
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

**AAC (.aac/.m4a/.mp4/.3gp/.3g2/.AAC/.M4A/.MP4/.3GP/.3G2):**
- Supported formats: MPEG-2/MPEG-4 Audio
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Supported bitrates: Between 8 kbps and 320 kbps, and VBR

**FLAC (.flac/.FLAC):**
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz
- Quantization bit: 8 bit, 16 bit, 24 bit

**LPCM (Linear PCM):**
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz
- Quantization bit: 16 bit

**Apple Lossless (.m4a/.mp4/.M4A/.MP4):**
- Supported sampling rates: 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz
- Quantization bit: 16 bit, 24 bit

**DSD (.dsf/.dff/.DSF/.DFF):**
- Supported formats: DSF/DSDIFF
- Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz, 5.6 MHz, 11.2 MHz
- When playing files recorded with VBR (Variable bit-rate), the playback time may not be displayed correctly.
- Remote playback does not support the gapless playback.
Play Queue

When downloading Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™) to mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet, you can save your favorite playlist (Play Queue information) among music files stored in the USB storage device connected to this unit and music files stored in PC or NAS connected to the same network as this unit, and you can play the music on the playlist. The Play Queue information is effective until the power cord of this unit is removed from the outlet.

Initial Setup

1. Connect this unit to your home network by the network settings on this unit.
2. Download Onkyo Controller from App Store or Google Play™ Store.
3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
4. Start up Onkyo Controller, and select this unit.

Adding Play Queue Information

1. Select the "INPUT" input on the application screen, and tap the "USB" icon. Or, select the “NET” input, and tap the “USB” icon or "Music Server" icon. (Depending on the model, the icon names may be different.)

2. Tapping the “+” icon of the track you want to add will open the pop-up to add the Play Queue information.

3. Touch the "Play Now ☐️", "Play Next ☐️" or "Play Last ☐️" icon to add the track to Play Queue.
• If there are no tracks on the Play Queue list, only "Play Now" is displayed.

**Sort and Delete**

1. Select the "NET" input, tap the "Play Queue" icon, and enter the Play Queue service screen.

2. Tap the "•-•" icon of the track to sort, and drag the icon to the destination.

3. To delete a track, slide the track to the left until the trash icon changes to "Trash". If the device is on iOS, slide the "Trash" icon to the left. Releasing your finger will delete the track from Play Queue.

**Playing Back**

Playback starts when you select "Play Now" for Play Queue addition, or select the track in the Play Queue service screen.
Registering this unit with Amazon Music allows you to enjoy the music distribution service provided by Amazon. You can register this unit on the screen of Onkyo Controller by downloading Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™) to mobile devices such as a smartphone and tablet.

- To play Amazon Music, you need to have your Amazon account and sign up for Amazon Prime or Amazon Music Unlimited. For more information, see the Amazon website.

Amazon Music is now available in several countries. If Amazon Music is not available in your country, please visit https://music.amazon.com/ for more info.

### Registering This Unit with Amazon Music

- You can register this unit with Amazon Music using Onkyo Controller. The registration cannot be performed by operation of this unit.
  1. Connect this unit to your home network by the network settings on this unit.
  2. Download Onkyo Controller using your mobile device.
  3. Connect the mobile device to the network where this unit is connected.
  4. Start up Onkyo Controller to automatically display this unit. Tap and select this unit displayed.
  5. Tap “NET” or “NETWORK” on the upper part of the Onkyo Controller’s screen to switch to the network menu. Then tap the “Amazon Music” icon to display the login screen of Amazon Music. (Depending on the model, the icon names may be different.)
    - If the login screen is not displayed but an update or installation screen is displayed instead, perform the update or installation according to the on-screen instructions.
  
  6. Enter the Amazon account information such as email address and password to log in to Amazon. When the login is successful and this unit is registered, the Amazon Music menu is displayed. For playback, proceed to step 3 in the next section.

### Playing Amazon Music

1. Start up Onkyo Controller. This unit is automatically displayed after startup. Then, tap and select this unit displayed.
2. Tap “NET” or “NETWORK” on the upper part of the screen to switch to the network screen. Then tap the “Amazon Music” icon.
3. Select the content to play from the menu screen of Amazon Music to start playback.
   - To play Amazon Music using the remote controller, operate the input selector on the remote controller to display the network menu, and select “Amazon Music” from the menu.

Available services may differ depending on your area.
Connecting the Sonos System for Playback

Connecting this unit and Sonos Connect allows you to send the music or music sources on the Sonos App to this unit. Through Sonos Connect, you can play this unit with the same group of another Sonos device on the network or can play only on this unit. Also, if you start to play music from Sonos App, this unit is automatically turned on and the link function to switch input works.

- When "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Network Standby" is set to "Off" in the Setup menu, turn this unit on manually, and press the NET button on the remote controller. In the factory default setting, the Network Standby function (p150) is set to On.

Necessary Equipment

- Sonos Connect
- RCA audio cable (supplied with Sonos Connect)

How to Connect This Unit and Sonos Connect

1. Connect the Sonos Connect to the AUDIO IN jack of this unit with the RCA audio cable supplied with the Sonos Connect. Any input jacks other than the PHONO jack can be used.
   - A digital cable can also be connected. For details, refer to the instruction manual of Sonos.
   - You can change the name of the input selector displayed on this unit to easier-to-understand name. For example, the input connected to Sonos Connect can be changed from "CD" (or another input selector) to "SONOS". Press the button on the remote controller, select "4. Source" - "Name Edit" and then change the name.

Setting Up

A setup is required to play Sonos on this unit. Make the setting according to the following procedure.

1. Press the button on the remote controller, select "5. Hardware" - "Works with SONOS", and press the ENTER button.
2. Select the following items with the cursors ▲ / ▼ and set each item.
   - **Input Selector:**
     Enable the interlocking function with the Sonos Connect. With the cursors ▲/▼, select the input selector to which the Sonos Connect is connected.
   - **Connected Device:**
     Press the ENTER button to display Sonos devices connected to the same network as the network of this unit. Select the Sonos Connect connected to the unit and press the ENTER button.
     - Products (e.g. Play:3 unequipped with an output terminal) other than the Sonos Connect are also displayed in the device list and selectable. In that case, when playback on the Sonos side starts, the input is switched, however, audio is not output. Select the room name of the connected Sonos Connect.
     - Up to 32 devices can be displayed on the Sonos product list screen. If you cannot find the Sonos Connect to be interlocked, return to the previous screen, turn off the product you want to interlock, and try again.
Output Zone:
With the cursors ◀/▶, select the ZONE where you want to listen to the music.
"MAIN": Outputs audio only to the main room (where this unit is located).
"Zone 2": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 2).
"Main/Zone 2": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room (ZONE 2).
"Zone 3": Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 3).
"Main/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room (ZONE 3).
"Zone 2/Zone 3": Outputs audio to both the separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).
"Main/Zone 2/Zone 3": Outputs audio to the main room and both separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3).

Playing Sonos on This Unit
1. Select desired tracks using Sonos App and send the tracks to the room where this unit is located (or to the group). It is recommended to give an easy-to-remember name to the combination of this unit and Sonos Connect, such as TV Room or Living Room where this unit is located.
   • If the input selector of this unit is not automatically switched even after the start of music playback, stop the playback once and start again.
   • You can set the volume beforehand for playing back the Sonos Connect. Press the button on the remote controller, and select "5. Hardware" - "Works with SONOS" - "Preset Volume" (→p150) to make the setting.
Listening To the AM/FM Radio

You can receive AM and FM radio stations on this unit with the built-in tuner.

Tuning into a Radio Station

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

**Tuning Automatically**

1. Press TUNER repeatedly to select either "AM" or "FM".
2. Press MODE repeatedly to display "TunMode: Auto" on the display.
3. When you press the cursors ▲ / ▼, automatic tuning starts, and searching stops when a station is found. When tuned in to a radio station, the "TUNED" indicator on the display lights up. When tuned in to an FM radio station, the "FM ST" indicator lights up.
When FM broadcasts reception is poor: Perform the procedure for “Tuning Manually” (→p89). Note that if you tune manually, the reception for FM broadcasts will be monaural rather than stereo, irrespective of the sensitivity of the reception.

Tuning Manually
Note that if you tune manually, the reception for FM broadcasts will be monaural rather than stereo, irrespective of the sensitivity of the reception.
1. Press TUNER repeatedly to select either "AM" or "FM".
2. Press MODE repeatedly to display "TunMode: Manual" on the display.

```
TunMode: Manual
```
3. While pressing the cursors ▲ / ▼, select the desired radio station.
   • Each time you press the cursors ▲ / ▼, the frequency changes by 1 step.
     If the button is held down, the frequency changes continuously, and if the button is released, the frequency stops changing.

Frequency step setting
Press ⚫, and using the cursors and ENTER, select “7. Miscellaneous” - “Tuner” - "AM/FM Frequency Step" or "AM Frequency Step", and then select the frequency step for your area. Note that when this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted.

FAQ Presetting a Radio Station (→p90)
Presetting a Radio Station

Registration Procedure

You can preset up to 40 of your favorite AM/FM radio stations. After tuning in to the AM/FM radio station you want to register, perform the following procedure.

1. Press MEMORY so that the preset number on the display blinks.

2. While the preset number is blinking (approx. 8 seconds), repeatedly press the cursors ▲/▼ to select a number between 1 and 40.

3. Press MEMORY again to register the station.

When the station is registered, the preset number stops blinking. Repeat this steps to register your favorite AM/FM radio stations.
Selecting a Preset Radio Station

1. Press TUNER.
2. Press the cursors ◄/► to select a preset number.

Deleting a Preset Radio Station

1. Press TUNER.
2. Press the cursors ◄/► to select the preset number to delete.
3. After pressing MEMORY, press CLEAR while the preset number is blinking, and delete the preset number. When deleted, the number on the display disappears.

Using RDS (Asian models) (→ p92)
Using RDS (Asian models)

RDS stands for Radio Data System, and is a method of transmitting data in FM radio signals. In regions where RDS can be used, when you tune in to a radio station broadcasting program information, the radio station name is displayed on the display. When you press the button on the remote controller in this state, you can use the following functions.

Display Text Information (Radio Text)

1. While the name of the station is being displayed on the display, press the button on the remote controller once.
   The Radio Text (RT), which is text information delivered by the station, is displayed scrolling across the display. "No Text Data" is displayed when no text information is delivered.

Search for Stations by Program Type

1. While the name of the station is being displayed on the display, press the button on the remote controller twice.
   • If none of the Program Types are set for the radio station under reception, "None" is displayed.
2. Press the cursor buttons on the remote controller to select the Program Type you want to search for, and then press the ENTER button to start the search.
   • The Program Types displayed are as follows: None / News (News reports) / Affairs (Current affairs) / Info (Information) / Sport / Educate (Education) / Drama / Culture / Science (Science and technology) / Varied / Pop M (Pop music) / Rock M (Rock music) / Easy M (Middle of the road music) / Light M (Light classics) / Classics (Serious classics) / Other M (Other music) / Weather / Finance / Children (Children's programmes) / Social (Social affairs) / Religion / Phone In / Travel / Leisure / Jazz (Jazz music) / Country (Country music) / Nation M (National music) / Oldies (Oldies music) / Folk M (Folk music) / Document (Documentary)
   • The information displayed may not match the content delivered by the station.
3. When a station is found, the station blinks on the display. Pressing the ENTER button in this state will receive that station. If you don't press the ENTER button, the unit starts to search for another station.
   • If no stations are found, the message "Not Found" is displayed.
   • Unusual characters may be displayed when the unit receives unsupported characters. This is not a malfunction. Also, if the signal from a station is weak, information may not be displayed.
Multi-zone

You can enjoy 2-ch audio in the separate room (ZONE 2/ZONE 3) while performing playback in the main room (where this unit is located). The same source can be played back in the main room and ZONE 2/ZONE 3 simultaneously. Also, different sources can be played back in both rooms. For the "NET" or "BLUETOOTH" input selector, you can select only the same source for the main room and separate room. If you select "NET" in the main room and then select "BLUETOOTH" in the separate room, the main room setting switches to "BLUETOOTH". You cannot select different stations of AM/FM broadcasts for the main room and separate room. Using Onkyo Controller is convenient for operations of multi-zone playback. You can use it on mobile devices, such as a smartphone and tablet to which Onkyo Controller (available on iOS or Android™) has been downloaded.

Playing Back (ZONE 2) (p94)
Playing Back (ZONE 2)

In remote controller operation, while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button, press other buttons for operation.

1. While pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller, point the remote controller at this unit and press Ø.
   • “Z2” on the display of the main unit lights up.

2. While pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller, press the input selector of the input source you want to play in the separate room. To control on the main unit, press the ZONE 2 button, and then within 8 seconds, press the input selector button of the input to be played in the separate room. To play the same source in the main room and separate room, press the ZONE 2 button of the main unit twice.

3. When using the ZONE 2 LINE OUT connection, adjust the sound volume on the pre-main amplifier in the separate room. As for the ZONE speaker output, adjust the volume with the volume button while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller. To do this on the main unit, press the ZONE 2 button, and then within 8 seconds, adjust the volume using the MASTER VOLUME dial.
   • Information of a connected device can be displayed on the TV in the separate room. Press the i button while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller.
   • If you turn the unit to standby during multi-zone playback, the Z2 indicator is dimmed, and the playback mode is switched to playback in a separate room only. Setting ZONE 2 to on while the unit is in standby also switches the playback mode to playback in the separate room only.
   • The audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2ch PCM signal. When the AV component is connected to this unit with an HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.
   • When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.
• DSD audio signals cannot be output to ZONE 2 with the "NET" input selector.
• If ZONE 2 is on, power consumption during standby will increase.

To disable the function: While pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button on the remote controller, press ◯.

Playing Back (ZONE 3) (→p96)
Playing Back (ZONE 3)

In remote controller operation, while pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button, press other buttons for operation. Set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone Speaker" in the Setup menu (→p135) to "Zone 2/Zone 3".

1. While pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button on the remote controller, point the remote controller at this unit and press .
   • “Z3” on the display of the main unit lights up.

2. While pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button on the remote controller, press the input selector of the input source you want to play in the separate room. To control on the main unit, press the ZONE 3 button, and then within 8 seconds, press the input selector button of the input to be played in the separate room. To play the same source in the main room and separate room, press the ZONE 3 button of the main unit twice.

3. Adjust the volume with the volume button while pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button on the remote controller. To do this on the main unit, press the ZONE 3 button, and then within 8 seconds, adjust the volume using the MASTER VOLUME dial.
   • If you turn the unit to standby during multi-zone playback, the Z3 indicator is dimmed, and the playback mode is switched to playback in a separate room only. Setting ZONE 3 to on while the unit is in standby also switches the playback mode to playback in the separate room only.
   • For ZONE 3 output, audio from externally connected AV components can be output only when it is an analog audio signal.
   • DSD audio signals cannot be output to ZONE 3 with the "NET" input selector.
   • If ZONE 3 is on, power consumption during standby will increase.

To disable the function: While pressing and holding the ZONE 3 SHIFT button on the remote controller, press .
ZONE B Playback

While performing playback through speakers (ZONE A) connected to the unit, you can enjoy the audio of the same source with the pre-main amplifier, etc. (ZONE B) (→p59) connected to the ZONE B LINE OUT jack at the same time.

Playing Back

1. Press the Q button on the remote controller and select "Audio" - "Zone B".
   • In the following cases, "Zone B" cannot be selected.
     – When ZONE 2 is On
     – When "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" on the Setup menu is set to "Zone 2" (→p136)

2. Select the audio output destination.
   Off: Outputs audio only from ZONE A. "A" on the display of the main unit lights up.
   On(A+B): Outputs audio from both ZONE A and ZONE B. "A" and "B" on the display of the main unit light up.
   On(B): Outputs audio only from ZONE B. "B" on the display of the main unit lights up.

3. Start play on the AV component.

4. Adjust the sound volume on the pre-main amplifier, etc. of ZONE B.
   • When "Zone 2 Lineout" is set to "Zone B", and "Audio" - "Zone B" on the Quick Menu is set to "On (A+B)", the ZONE A output is set as below.
     – Sound quality cannot be adjusted.
     – "2. Speaker" - "Crossover" - "Double Bass" on the Setup menu (→p137) is fixed to "On".
     – The effect for "2. Speaker" - "Distance" on the Setup menu (→p137) is disabled.
   • If "On(A+B)" is selected as an audio output destination, you can select only the "Stereo" listening mode for ZONE A when using the 2.1ch speaker layout. When using a speaker layout of 3.1ch or more, you can select only the "AllCh Stereo" listening mode.
Displaying Your Favorite Video on TV While Playing Music

While listening to the music from a CD or BLUETOOTH-enabled device, you can display video on TV from an AV component such as a Blu-ray Disc player.

- For audio playback, you can select an input selector to which video input is not assigned, such as "CD", "PHONO", "TUNER", "NET" and "BLUETOOTH".
- When "OSD Language" (→p131) is set to Chinese, the audio from "NET" and "BLUETOOTH" cannot be played.

Perform the following procedure when this unit is on.

1. Switch the input on the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Press an input selector such as BD/DVD button connected to the AV component of which the video is to be displayed on TV.
   - This operation is not necessary if the same input selector has been selected in the previous operation.
3. Press an input selector of the audio you want to play, such as the CD or BLUETOOTH button and perform playback operation.
4. Perform the playback operation of the AV component such as a Blu-ray Disc player. To play the audio of NET or BLUETOOTH, the following step 5 operation is required.
5. To play the audio of NET or BLUETOOTH, press the MODE button to switch the TV display from the NET or BLOOTOOTH playback screen to the video of the AV component. Pressing the MODE button again will return to the NET or BLOOTOOTH playback screen.
   - When the TV display is switched to the video of the AV component, the playback screen of NET or BLUETOOTH is displayed on the corner of the screen as Mini Player. The setting for Mini Player can be changed on the Setup Menu so that it automatically turns off in 30 seconds after displayed. (→p132 "Mini Player OSD")

Setting the video source to be displayed on TV beforehand: When playing the audio of "TUNER", "NET" and "BLUETOOTH", you can set the input selector to be displayed on TV beforehand using "Video Select" (→p144) on the Setup Menu. If a value other than "Last" is set, step 2 in the operation procedure is not required.
Adjusting the tone

Adjusting TREBLE/BASS
You can adjust the sound quality of the speakers.
1. Press TREBLE or BASS to select the content to adjust.
   TREBLE: Enhances or moderates the high-tone range of the speakers.
   BASS: Enhances or moderates the low-tone range of the speakers.
2. Press + or - to adjust.

Adjusting VOCAL
Emphasizes movie lines and music vocals to listen to them more easily. It is effective to movie lines in particular. Also, it exerts the effect even if the center speaker is not used. Select a desired level from "1" (low) to "5" (high).
1. Press VOCAL.
2. Press + or - to adjust.
   • Depending on the input source or listening mode setting, selection is not possible, or the desired effect may not be achieved.
Sleep Timer

You can allow the unit to enter standby automatically when the specified time has elapsed. Press the SLEEP button on the remote controller, and select any of "30 min", "60 min" and "90 min".

"Off": The unit does not automatically enter standby mode.

You can also set this by pressing the $ button on the remote controller and selecting "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - “Sleep Timer” (→p149) on the Setup menu.
Listening Mode

This unit is equipped with a variety of listening modes, and you can select the optimum listening mode for movies, TV, music, and games by pressing MOVIE/TV, MUSIC, and GAME.

Selecting a Listening mode

1. Press one from among MOVIE/TV, MUSIC, and GAME during playback.
2. Press the selected button repeatedly to switch the modes displayed on the display of the main unit.

- Each of MOVIE/TV, MUSIC and GAME buttons stores the listening mode that was selected last. If content incompatible of the listening mode selected last is played, the most standard listening mode for the content is automatically selected.
- For details of the effects of each listening mode, refer to "Listening Mode Effects" (p106).
- For listening modes selectable for each audio format of input signals, refer to "Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes" (p112).
Checking the input format and listening mode

Repeatedly pressing the \( i \) button on the remote controller switches the display of the main unit in the following order.

- The display content for the BLUETOOTH input is different.
- Not all the information is necessarily displayed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input source and volume</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BD/DVD</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening mode</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input Format</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The display is switched in a few seconds.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampling frequency</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( fs ): 48kHz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Input signal resolution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1080p( \times )60 16:9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

See the following table for selectable listening modes for each speaker layout.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Listening mode</th>
<th>Speaker layout (ch)</th>
<th>2.1</th>
<th>3.1</th>
<th>4.1</th>
<th>5.1</th>
<th>6.1</th>
<th>7.1</th>
<th>2.1.2</th>
<th>3.1.2</th>
<th>4.1.2</th>
<th>5.1.2</th>
<th>6.1.2</th>
<th>7.1.2</th>
<th>4.1.4</th>
<th>5.1.4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DD (Dolby Audio - DD)</td>
<td>(*)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DD+ (Dolby Audio - DD+)</td>
<td>(*)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTHD (Dolby Audio - TrueHD)</td>
<td>(*)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos 2.0/2.1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos 3.0/3.1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos 4.0/4.1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos 5.0/5.1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos 6.0/6.1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos 7.0/7.1</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos 2.0.2/2.1.2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmos 3.0.2/3.1.2</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur 2.0/2.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur 3.0/3.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur 4.0/4.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur 5.0/5.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur 6.0/6.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur 7.0/7.1 (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur 2.0.2/2.1.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dsur 3.0.2/3.1.2 (Dolby Audio - Surr)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening mode</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>2.1.2</td>
<td>3.1.2</td>
<td>4.1.2</td>
<td>5.1.2</td>
<td>6.1.2</td>
<td>7.1.2</td>
<td>4.1.4</td>
<td>5.1.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES Discrete (DTS-ES Discrete)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES Matrix (DTS-ES Matrix)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS 96/24</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD HR (DTS-HD High Resolution)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD Master (DTS-HD Master Audio)</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS:X</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS Neural:X</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td>✓ (*3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Listening mode</td>
<td>Speaker layout (ch)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>6.1</td>
<td>7.1</td>
<td>2.1.2</td>
<td>3.1.2</td>
<td>4.1.2</td>
<td>5.1.2</td>
<td>6.1.2</td>
<td>7.1.2</td>
<td>4.1.4</td>
<td>5.1.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multich (Multichannel)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DSD</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stereo</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Cinema</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Cin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Music</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Mus</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Games</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Gam</td>
<td></td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orchestra</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Studio-Mix</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Logic</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unplugged</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Action</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Rock</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-RPG</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Sports</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-D (Theater-Dimensional)</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td>✔(*)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1: Reproduced with the sound field according to the number of channels of input signals.
*2: Not output from surround back speakers or height speakers.
*3: Not output from height speakers.
*4: Output only from front speakers.
*5: Output only from front speakers and center speaker.
Listening Mode Effects

Updating of listening modes

Listening modes such as **Atmos 2.0** and **DSur 2.0** are added when the firmware is updated after purchase or the firmware is switched in the product production process. For details of firmware update, see "Additional Function (Firmware Update)" (→p6).

In alphabetical order

### AllCh Stereo

This mode is ideal for background music. Stereo sound is played through the surround speakers as well as the front speakers, creating a stereo image.

### Direct

This listening mode can be selected for all input signals. Processing that affects sound quality is shut down, and sound closer to the original is reproduced. The sound is reproduced with the sound field based on the number of channels in the input signal. For example, a 2ch signal is output only from the front speakers. Note that the sound adjustment is not available when this mode is selected.

### Atmos

**Atmos**

**(Firmware version before supporting Atmos 2.0, etc.)**

Selectable at the time of inputting Dolby Atmos audio format when surround back speakers or height speakers are connected. This mode faithfully reproduces the stereophonic sound design recorded in the Dolby Atmos audio format. Unlike existing surround systems, Dolby Atmos does not rely on channels, but rather enables the accurate placement of sound objects that have independent motion in a 3D space with even greater clarity. Dolby Atmos is an optional audio format for Blu-ray Discs and achieves a more stereophonic sound field by introducing a sound field above the listener.

According to the speaker layout, the following listening modes are displayed:

- **Atmos 2.0/2.1**: When only front speakers are installed
- **Atmos 3.0/3.1**: When front speakers and center speaker are installed
- **Atmos 4.0/4.1**: When front speakers and surround speakers are installed
- **Atmos 5.0/5.1**: When front speakers, center speaker and surround speakers are installed
- **Atmos 6.0/6.1**: When front speakers, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- **Atmos 7.0/7.1**: When front speakers, center speaker, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- **Atmos 2.0.2/2.1.2**: When front speakers and height speakers are installed
- **Atmos 3.0.2/3.1.2**: When front speakers, center speaker and height speakers are installed
- **Atmos**: Selectable in the "4.1.2ch", "5.1.2ch", "6.1.2ch", "7.1.2ch", "4.1.4ch" or "5.1.4ch" setting with surround speakers and height speakers installed.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

**Atmos**

**(Firmware version supporting Atmos 2.0, etc.)**

Since this mode calculates the positional data of audio recorded in Dolby Atmos audio in real-time and outputs it from appropriate speakers, you can enjoy the natural and stereophonic sound field of Dolby Atmos with any speaker layout including connection of only front speakers. Also, the Dolby Atmos sound design can be reproduced more faithfully by connecting surround back speakers or height speakers. You can select this mode when inputting the Dolby Atmos audio format. Unlike existing surround systems, Dolby Atmos does not rely on channels, but rather enables the accurate placement of sound objects that have independent motion in a 3D space with even greater clarity. Dolby Atmos is an optional audio format for Blu-ray Discs and achieves a more stereophonic sound field by introducing a sound field above the listener.

According to the speaker layout, the following listening modes are displayed:

- **Atmos 2.0/2.1**: When only front speakers are installed
- **Atmos 3.0/3.1**: When front speakers and center speaker are installed
- **Atmos 4.0/4.1**: When front speakers and surround speakers are installed
- **Atmos 5.0/5.1**: When front speakers, center speaker and surround speakers are installed
- **Atmos 6.0/6.1**: When front speakers, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- **Atmos 7.0/7.1**: When front speakers, center speaker, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- **Atmos 2.0.2/2.1.2**: When front speakers and height speakers are installed
- **Atmos 3.0.2/3.1.2**: When front speakers, center speaker and height speakers are installed
- **Atmos**: Selectable in the "4.1.2ch", "5.1.2ch", "6.1.2ch", "7.1.2ch", "4.1.4ch" or "5.1.4ch" setting with surround speakers and height speakers installed.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.
- When "Speaker Virtualizer" (→p141) is set to "Off" (Default: On), modes
other than Atmos cannot be selected.

**DD (Dolby Audio - DD)**

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby Digital audio format. Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital format developed by Dolby Laboratories, Inc. and is widely adopted for use in movie production. It is also a standard audio format for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 5.1 channels on a DVD-Video or Blu-ray Disc; two front channels, one center channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass region (sound elements for the subwoofer).

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

**DD+ (Dolby Audio - DD+)**

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby Digital Plus audio format. The Dolby Digital Plus format has been improved based on Dolby Digital, increasing the number of channels and endeavoring to improve sound quality by giving more flexibility in data bit rates. Dolby Digital Plus is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

**DSur (Dolby Audio - Surr)**

(Firmware version before supporting DSur 2.0, etc.)

This listening mode expands actual channels to more channels for playback according to the configuration of the connected speakers by expanding the input signals from 2ch or 5.1ch to 5.1ch, 7.1ch or 5.1.2ch.

- This mode cannot be selected when DTS signal is input.

**DSur (Dolby Audio - Surr)**

(Firmware version supporting DSur 2.0, etc.)

This listening mode expands 2ch or 5.1ch input signals to 5.1ch, 7.1ch or 5.1.2ch. This mode expands actual channels to more channels for playback according to the configuration of the connected speakers. Also, even if there is no speaker for expansion, for example when only front speakers are connected, audio of surround channel or height channel is virtually created for expansion playback.

- This mode cannot be selected when DTS signal is input.

According to the speaker layout, the following listening modes are displayed.

- **DSur 2.0/2.1**: When only front speakers are installed
- **DSur 3.0/3.1**: When front speakers and center speaker are installed
- **DSur 4.0/4.1**: When front speakers and surround speakers are installed
- **DSur 5.0/5.1**: When front speakers, center speaker and surround speakers are installed
- **DSur 6.0/6.1**: When front speakers, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- **DSur 7.0/7.1**: When front speakers, center speaker, surround speakers and surround back speakers are installed
- **DSur 2.0.2/2.1.2**: When front speakers and height speakers are installed
- **DSur 3.0.2/3.1.2**: When front speakers, center speaker and height speakers are installed

- When "Speaker Virtualizer" (p141) is set to "Off" (Default: On), modes other than DSur cannot be selected.

**DTHD (Dolby Audio - TrueHD)**

This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the Dolby TrueHD audio format. The Dolby TrueHD audio format is a "lossless" format expanded based on the lossless compression technology referred to as MLP, and it faithfully reproduces the master audio recorded in the studio. Dolby TrueHD is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as the surround back channel. 7.1ch is recorded at 96 kHz/24 bit, and 5.1ch is recorded at 192 kHz/24 bit.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.
DSD
This mode is suitable for playing sources recorded in DSD.
• This unit supports the DSD signal input from the HDMI input terminal.
  However, depending on the connected player, better sound may be obtained
  by setting the output on the player side to the PCM output.
• This listening mode cannot be selected if the output setting on your Blu-ray
  Disc/DVD player is not set to DSD.

DTS
This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS audio
format.
The DTS audio format is a multi-channel digital format developed by DTS, Inc.
This format is an optional audio format for DVD-Video and a standard format for
Blu-ray Discs. It enables recording of 5.1 channels; two front channels, one center
channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass
region (sound elements for the subwoofer). The content is recorded with a rich
volume of data, with a maximum sampling rate of 48 kHz, at a resolution of 24
bits and a bit rate of 1.5 Mbps.
• To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the
  audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

DTS 96/24
This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS 96/24
audio format.
The DTS 96/24 format is an optional audio format for DVD-Video and Blu-ray
Discs. It enables recording of 5.1 channels; two front channels, one center
channel, two surround channels, and the LFE channel dedicated to the bass
region (sound elements for the subwoofer). Detailed reproduction is achieved by
recording the content at a sampling rate of 96 kHz and at a resolution of 24 bits.
• To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the
  audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

DTS Express
This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS Express
audio format.
DTS Express is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-ray Discs. It is
possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional channels such as
the surround back channel. It also supports low bit rates.
  • To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the
    audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

DTS-HD HR (DTS-HD High Resolution)
This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-HD High
Resolution Audio audio format.
DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for
Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional
channels such as the surround back channel at a sampling rate of 96 kHz and at
a resolution of 24 bits.
  • To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the
    audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

DTS-HD MSTR (DTS-HD Master Audio)
This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-HD
Master Audio audio format.
DTS-HD Master Audio is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for Blu-
ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 7.1 channels with additional
channels such as the surround back channel using the lossless audio
reproduction technology. 96 kHz/24 bit is supported for 7.1ch, and 192 kHz/24 bit
is supported for 5.1ch.
  • To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the
    audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

DTS Neural:X
This listening mode expands actual channels to more channels for playback to
suit the configuration of the connected speakers by expanding the input signals
from 2 channels or 5.1 channels to 5.1 channels or 7.1 channels respectively.
• This mode cannot be selected when Dolby signal is input.

DTS:X
This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS:X audio
format.
The DTS:X audio format is a combination of the mixing method based on
traditional channel based formats (5.1ch and 7.1ch) and object based dynamic audio mixing, and it is characterized by the precise positioning of sounds and the ability to express sound movement.

- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via an HDMI cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

**ES Discrete (DTS-ES Discrete)**
This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-ES Discrete audio format.
DTS-ES Discrete is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. It is possible to record a maximum of 6.1 channels with a monaural surround back channel added.
- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

**ES Matrix (DTS-ES Matrix)**
This mode faithfully reproduces the sound design recorded in the DTS-ES Matrix audio format.
DTS-ES Matrix is an optional audio format based on 5.1ch for DVD-Video and Blu-ray Discs. A monaural surround back channel is inserted to this format by matrix encoding. During playback, 6.1 channel-playback is achieved by the matrix decoder on this unit.
- To enable transfer of this audio format, connect via a digital cable and set the audio output on the player to Bitstream output.

**Full Mono**
In this mode, all speakers output the same sound in mono, so the sound you hear is the same regardless of where you are within the listening room.

**Game-Action**
This mode is suitable for games with a lot of action.

**Game-Rock**
This mode is suitable for games with rock content.

**Game-RPG**
This mode is suitable for role-playing games.

**Game-Sports**
This mode is suitable for sports games.

**Mono**
In this mode, monaural audio is played from the center speaker at the time of inputting an analog signal or PCM signal. If there is no center speaker connected, monaural audio is played from the front speakers.

**Multich (Multichannel)**
This mode is suitable to play sources recorded in multichannel PCM.

**Orchestra**
This mode is suitable for classical or operatic music. This mode emphasizes the surround channels in order to widen the sound image, and simulates the natural reverberation of a large hall.

**Stereo**
In this mode, sound is output from the right and left front speakers and subwoofer.

**Studio-Mix**
This mode is suitable for rock or pop music. This mode creates a lively sound field with a powerful acoustic image as if you are at a club or rock concert.

**T-D (Theater-Dimensional)**
In this mode, you can enjoy a virtual playback of multichannel surround sound even with only two or three speakers. This works by controlling how sounds reach the listener’s left and right ears.
- This mode cannot be selected when “Speaker Virtualizer” (→ p141) is set to “Off” (Default: On).
THX

THX is a series of specifications for the accurate reproduction of movies propounded by the film director George Lucas. THX listening modes include the THX Cinema mode, etc. Using technology such as THX Loudness Plus and Timbre Matching, the sound of a movie theater is reproduced accurately.

THX technology:
A movie soundtrack is mixed in a large-scale theater specially made for mixing that is called a dubbing stage on the assumption that the soundtrack is played in such theaters with similar equipment and conditions. These soundtracks are recorded as is, even when recording to a DVD-Video, for example, without making any modifications to suit a home theater environment. THX technology is able to reproduce the movie theater sound accurately in a home theater environment by minimizing acoustic and spatial deviation.

- **THX Loudness Plus**
  THX Loudness Plus is a new volume control technology mounted on THX Ultra and THX Select-certified AV receivers. With THX Loudness Plus, home theater audience can experience the rich details of surround sound at any volume level. If the volume is turned down below the reference level, elements of sound in a certain range are lost, or the sound is perceived differently by audience. THX Loudness Plus compensates for the tonal and spatial shifts that occur when the volume is reduced, by intelligently adjusting ambient surround channel levels and frequency response.

- **Re-EQ**
  The speakers for the front channel in a movie theater are installed behind the screen. For this reason the high range is enhanced in the sound track of the front channel in view of acoustic characteristics such as the necessity to penetrate the screen. Re-EQ adjusts the soundtrack with the enhanced high range to make it suitable for a home theater.

- **Timbre Matching**
  The perception of human ears differs depending on the sound direction. Movie theaters have many surround speakers installed, so they are excellent at surrounding the viewers with natural sound, but home theaters have only two surround speakers installed. The Timbre Matching function filters the signals sent to the surround speakers, and adjusts the tonal characteristics of front speakers and surround speakers to create smooth sound movement from front speakers to surround speakers.

- **Adaptive Decorrelation**
  While movie theaters have many surround speakers to enable the experience where viewers are surrounded with sound, home theaters normally have only two surround speakers. Such two surround speakers give a headphone-like sound, not a broad and embracing surround sound. If a listener moves away from the middle position between the surround speakers, the sound from the surround speakers is absorbed into the sound from the nearby speakers, and cannot be distinguished any more. Adaptive Decorrelation changes the time axis and phase between the surround channels so that you can enjoy the same spatial sound with two surround speakers as in a movie theater.

- **ASA (Advanced Speaker Array)**
  ASA is a technology patented by THX to provide a broad surround sound experience by adjusting the sounds of two surround speakers on the sides and two surround speakers at the back. When installing the surround back speakers, be sure to select the distance between the two surround back speakers in the THX Audio settings. This setting optimizes the surround sound environment.

THX listening modes:
- **THX Cinema**: Use this mode in a home theater environment to play the soundtrack that was recorded on the assumption that it is played in a movie theater or similar large area. In this mode, THX Loudness Plus is set to the theater level, and Re-EQ, Timbre Matching and Adaptive Decorrelation are all enabled.

- **THX Games**: Use this mode for high-fidelity spatial reproduction of game sound. THX Loudness Plus is set to a level suited to the audio level of the game, and Timbre Matching is enabled.

- **THX Music**: This mode mainly adjusts the playback of music sources that are mastered to a much higher quality obviously than movie audio. In this mode, THX Loudness Plus is set to a level suited to the playback of music, and Timbre Matching is enabled.

- **THX Sel Cin (THX Select Cinema)**: The THX Select Cinema mode provides a high-quality surround sound experience by expanding movie sources recorded in 5.1ch for 7.1ch playback. In this mode, the THX ASA processing technology gives smooth transition between side and back surround sounds, creating the
best atmosphere and directional sense of surround sound.

- **THX Sel Gam (THX Select Games):** Select the THX Select Games mode to play game sound recorded in a multichannel format. In this mode, the THX ASA processing technology enables the playback of game sound in a 360-degree sound field which was recorded in PCM, DTS, Dolby Digital and other 5.1ch formats.

- **THX Sel Mus (THX Select Music):** Select THX Select Music to play music sources recorded in a multichannel format. In this mode, the THX ASA processing technology creates a broad and stable back sound field when playing music sources recorded in 5.1ch, such as DTS, Dolby Digital, and DVD-Audio.

### TV Logic

Suitable for TV shows produced in a TV studio. This mode gives clarity to voices by enhancing the entire surround sounds, and creates a realistic acoustic image.

### Unplugged

Suitable for acoustic instruments, vocals and jazz. This mode emphasizes the front sound field image, giving the impression of being in front of the stage.
### Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes

You can select a variety of listening modes according to the audio format of the signal to be input.

- List of listening modes selectable with the MOVIE/TV button (→p112)
- List of listening modes selectable with the MUSIC button (→p116)
- List of listening modes selectable with the GAME button (→p121)
- Selectable listening modes when headphones are connected are Mono, Direct, and Stereo only.

#### MOVIE/TV button

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analog</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DSur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Cinema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TV Logic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. Surround speakers need to be installed.
2. Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
3. A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
4. Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".
5. Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.

### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→p103)
### Input Format Listening Mode

**Multich PCM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>Multich¹</th>
<th>DSur</th>
<th>DTS Neural:X</th>
<th>THX Cinema²</th>
<th>THX Sel Cin³</th>
<th>TV Logic⁴</th>
<th>AllCh Stereo⁵</th>
<th>Full Mono⁵</th>
<th>T-D⁶</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

¹ A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
² Surround speakers need to be installed.
³ Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
⁴ Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
⁵ A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
⁶ Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

**Input Format Listening Mode**

**DSD**
- You cannot select any mode other than Direct, AllCh Stereo and Full Mono if the sampling rate is 5.6/11.2 MHz.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>DSD¹²</th>
<th>DSur</th>
<th>DTS Neural:X</th>
<th>THX Cinema³</th>
<th>THX Sel Cin⁴</th>
<th>TV Logic⁵</th>
<th>AllCh Stereo⁶</th>
<th>Full Mono⁶</th>
<th>T-D⁷</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

¹ Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
² A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
³ Surround speakers need to be installed.
⁴ Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
⁵ Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
⁶ A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
⁷ Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

**Input Format Listening Mode**

**Atmos¹**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>Atmos¹</th>
<th>TV Logic</th>
<th>AllCh Stereo</th>
<th>Full Mono</th>
<th>T-D²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

¹ With the firmware version before supporting Atmos 2.0, etc., you can select the DD⁺ or DTHD listening mode when surround back speakers or height speakers are not connected.
² Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

#### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→ p103)
### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→ p103)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DD+</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DD+<em>1</em>2*3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DSur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Cinema*4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Cin*5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Logic*6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-D?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
- *2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
- *3 If the input source is Blu-ray Disc and the speaker layout is 5.1 ch or less, DD+ cannot be selected. Instead, the listening mode for DD can be selected.
- *4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
- *5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
- *6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
- *7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
- *8 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DTHD</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DTHD<em>1</em>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DSur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Cinema*3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Cin*4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Logic*5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-D?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
- *2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
- *3 Surround speakers need to be installed.
- *4 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
- *5 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
- *6 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
- *7 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DTS</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DTS<em>1</em>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>✔️ DTS Neural:X*3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Cinema*4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Cin*5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Logic*6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-D?</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- *1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
- *2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
- *3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
- *4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
- *5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
- *6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
- *7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
- *8 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".
### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→p103)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS 96/24</td>
<td>Direct</td>
<td>DTS-HD HR</td>
<td>Direct</td>
<td>DTS-HD HR</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS 96/24*1</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>DTS-HD HR*1</td>
<td>DTS-HD HR*1</td>
<td>DTS-HD HR</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
<td></td>
<td>DTS-HD HR*2</td>
<td>DTS-HD HR*2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Cinema*4</td>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Cin*5</td>
<td></td>
<td>THX Cinema*4</td>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV Logic*6</td>
<td></td>
<td>THX Sel Cin*5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo*7</td>
<td></td>
<td>TV Logic*6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono*7</td>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-D*8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono*7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*4 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*8 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD MSTR</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS-HD MSTR&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Cinema&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Sel Cin&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TV Logic&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D&lt;sup&gt;9&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
<sup>2</sup> A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>3</sup> Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
<sup>4</sup> Surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>5</sup> Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
<sup>6</sup> Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>7</sup> A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>8</sup> Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS:ES</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ES Matrix&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ES Discrete&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Cinema&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TV Logic&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> This can only be selected when no surround back speaker is connected.
<sup>2</sup> Surround back speakers need to be installed.
<sup>3</sup> Surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>4</sup> Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>5</sup> A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>6</sup> Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS:X</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TV Logic&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>2</sup> A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>3</sup> Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

### MUSIC button

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analog</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS:DSur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Music&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orchestra&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unplugged&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Studio-Mix&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>2</sup> Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>3</sup> A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→p103)
### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PCM</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music files (except DSD)</td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-sur</td>
<td>Multich PCM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Music</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orchestra</td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unplugged</td>
<td>Multich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Studio-Mix</td>
<td>Dsur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo</td>
<td>THX Music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono</td>
<td>orchestra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*2 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*4 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multich PCM</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dsur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orchestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unplugged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Studio-Mix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*2 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*4 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*5 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DSD</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Multich</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Dsur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Music</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orchestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unplugged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Studio-Mix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*4 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*5 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*6 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

---

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes**

(→p103)
### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X Atmos(^1)</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orchestra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unplugged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Studio-Mix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) With the firmware version before supporting X Atmos 2.0, etc., you can select the X DD+ or X DTHD listening mode when surround back speakers or height speakers are not connected.

### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X DD+</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X DD+(^1)(^2)(^3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X DSur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Music(^4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Sel Mus(^5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orchestra(^6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unplugged(^6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Studio-Mix(^6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo(^7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono(^7)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.  
\(^2\) If the input source is Blu-ray Disc and the speaker layout is 5.1 ch or less, X DD+ cannot be selected. Instead, the listening mode for X DD can be selected.  
\(^3\) Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.  
\(^4\) Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.  
\(^5\) Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.  
\(^6\) A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.  
\(^7\) A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>X DTHD</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X DTHD(^1)(^2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>X DSur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Music(^3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Sel Mus(^4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orchestra(^5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unplugged(^5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Studio-Mix(^5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo(^6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono(^6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.  
\(^2\) A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.  
\(^3\) Surround speakers need to be installed.  
\(^4\) Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.  
\(^5\) Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.  
\(^6\) A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

---

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes**

(→p103)
### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→p103)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS</td>
<td>Direct</td>
<td>DTS 96/24</td>
<td>Direct</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
<td>DTS 96/24</td>
<td>Stereo</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS<em>1</em>2</td>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Music*4</td>
<td>THX Music*4</td>
<td>THX Music*4</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>THX Music*4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Sel Mus*5</td>
<td>THX Sel Mus*5</td>
<td>THX Sel Mus*5</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>THX Sel Mus*5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orchestra*6</td>
<td>Orchestra*6</td>
<td>Orchestra*6</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>Orchestra*6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unplugged*6</td>
<td>Unplugged*6</td>
<td>Unplugged*6</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>Unplugged*6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*7</td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*7</td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*7</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono*7</td>
<td>Full Mono*7</td>
<td>Full Mono*7</td>
<td>DTS Express</td>
<td>Full Mono*7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→p103)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD HR</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD HR*1</td>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD MSTR</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS Neural:X</td>
<td>DTS Neural:X*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS-ES</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTS*1</td>
<td>ES Matrix*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES Discrete*2</td>
<td>DTS Neural:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Music*4</td>
<td>THX Music*4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Mus*5</td>
<td>THX Sel Mus*5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Orchestra*6</td>
<td>Orchestra*6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unplugged*6</td>
<td>Unplugged*6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Studio-Mix*8</td>
<td>Studio-Mix*8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo*7</td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono*7</td>
<td>Full Mono*7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
*2 A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*4 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*5 Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
*6 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*7 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
### GAME button

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS:X</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Stereo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Orchestra*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unplugged*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Studio-Mix*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono*2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*2 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Analog</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DSur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Games*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-RPG*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Action*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Rock*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Sports*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono*3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D*4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
*2 Surround speakers need to be installed.
*3 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*4 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*5 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→p103)
### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>DSD</th>
<th>DSD(^1)</th>
<th>DSur</th>
<th>DTS Neural:X</th>
<th>THX Games(^2)</th>
<th>THX Sel Gam(^3)</th>
<th>Game-RPG(^4)</th>
<th>Game-Action(^4)</th>
<th>Game-Rock(^4)</th>
<th>Game-Sports(^4)</th>
<th>AllCh Stereo(^5)</th>
<th>Full Mono(^5)</th>
<th>T-D(^6)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multich PCM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.

\(^2\) A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.

\(^3\) Surround speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.

\(^4\) Surround speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.

\(^5\) A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.

\(^6\) Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

**Note:**
- **DSD** mode cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **DSur** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **DTS Neural:X** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **THX Sel Gam** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **Game-RPG** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **Game-Action** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **Game-Rock** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **Game-Sports** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **AllCh Stereo** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **Full Mono** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.
- **T-D** cannot be selected when the input format is monaural or 2 ch.

---

### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Direct</th>
<th>DSD</th>
<th>DSD(^1)</th>
<th>DSur</th>
<th>DTS Neural:X</th>
<th>THX Games(^2)</th>
<th>THX Sel Gam(^3)</th>
<th>Game-RPG(^4)</th>
<th>Game-Action(^5)</th>
<th>Game-Rock(^5)</th>
<th>Game-Sports(^5)</th>
<th>AllCh Stereo(^5)</th>
<th>Full Mono(^5)</th>
<th>T-D(^6)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atmos(^1)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) With the firmware version before supporting Atmos 2.0, etc., you can select the DD+ or DTHD listening mode when surround back speakers or height speakers are not connected.

\(^2\) Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

---

### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→p103)
### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

(→p103)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DD</strong></td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DD</strong>¹ ²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DSur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Games³</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Gam⁴</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-RPG⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Action⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Rock⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Sports⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-D⁷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
² A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
³ Surround speakers need to be installed.
⁴ Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
⁵ Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
⁶ Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DD⁺</strong></td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>**DD⁺**¹ ² ³ ⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DSur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Games⁴</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Gam⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-RPG⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Action⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Rock⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Sports⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo⁷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono⁷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-D⁸</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
² A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
³ If the input source is Blu-ray Disc and the speaker layout is 5.1 ch or less, **DD⁺** cannot be selected. Instead, the listening mode for **DD** can be selected.
⁴ Surround speakers need to be installed.
⁵ Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
⁶ Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
⁷ Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DTHD</strong></td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DTHD</strong>¹ ²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DSur</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Games³</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THX Sel Gam⁴</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-RPG⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Action⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Rock⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Game-Sports⁵</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllCh Stereo⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Mono⁶</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T-D⁷</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
² A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
³ Surround speakers need to be installed.
⁴ Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
⁵ Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
⁶ Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".
### Contents » Connections » Playback » Setup »

#### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes (→p103)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS 96/24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Games⁴</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Sel Gam⁵</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-RPG⁶</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Action⁷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Rock⁸</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Sports⁹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo⁷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono⁷</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D⁸</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
- A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
- Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
- Surround speakers need to be installed.
- Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
- Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
- A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
- Cannot be selected if “Speaker Virtualizer” is set to “Off.”
### Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD HR</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS-HD HR&lt;sup&gt;1,2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Games&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Sel Gam&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-RPG&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Action&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Rock&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Sports&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
<sup>2</sup> A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>3</sup> Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
<sup>4</sup> Surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>5</sup> Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
<sup>6</sup> Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>7</sup> A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>8</sup> Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS-HD MSTR</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS-HD MSTR&lt;sup&gt;1,2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Games&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Sel Gam&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-RPG&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Action&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Rock&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Sports&lt;sup&gt;6&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono&lt;sup&gt;7&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> Cannot be selected when the input format is 2 ch.
<sup>2</sup> A center speaker or surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>3</sup> Cannot be selected when the input format is monaural.
<sup>4</sup> Surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>5</sup> Surround back speakers need to be installed. Can be selected when the input format is 5.1 ch.
<sup>6</sup> Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>7</sup> A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>8</sup> Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS-ES</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS&lt;sup&gt;1&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ES Matrix&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ES Discrete&lt;sup&gt;2&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS Neural:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>THX Games&lt;sup&gt;3&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-RPG&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Action&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Rock&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Sports&lt;sup&gt;4&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono&lt;sup&gt;5&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D&lt;sup&gt;8&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>1</sup> This can only be selected when no surround back speaker is connected.
<sup>2</sup> Surround back speakers need to be installed.
<sup>3</sup> Surround speakers need to be installed.
<sup>4</sup> Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>5</sup> A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
<sup>8</sup> Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".
### Input Format Listening Mode

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input Format</th>
<th>Listening Mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS:X</td>
<td>Direct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>DTS:X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-RPG*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Action*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Rock*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Game-Sports*1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AllCh Stereo*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Full Mono*2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>T-D*3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*1 Surround speakers or height speakers need to be installed.
*2 A center speaker, surround speakers, or height speakers need to be installed.
*3 Cannot be selected if "Speaker Virtualizer" is set to "Off".

**Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes**

(→p103)
Inputting Characters

You can input characters or symbols on the keyboard displayed on the TV screen such as when inputting a password for Wi-Fi Setup (→p146) or naming a preset radio station (→p143).

1. Select a character or symbol with the cursors ▲ / ▼ / ◀ / ◁ on the remote controller and press the ENTER button.
2. When saving characters after input, select "OK" and press the ENTER button.

- Select "A/a" to switch between upper and lower cases. (Can also be switched with the MODE button on the remote controller.)
- To enter a space, select "_
- To delete a character on the left of the cursor, select "⑥".
- To delete all the input characters, press the CLEAR button on the remote control.
- On the ZONE 2 playback screen, operate the remote controller while pressing and holding the ZONE 2 SHIFT button. To delete all the input characters, only press the CLEAR button without pressing the ZONE 2 SHIFT button.
### Setup Menu

#### Menu list

You can configure advanced settings to have a more enjoyable experience with this unit. For operation details, refer to "Menu operations" (→p130).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Input/Output Assign</th>
<th>1. TV Out / OSD</th>
<th>Make settings for TV output and On-Screen Displays (OSD) that appear on the TV. (p131)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. HDMI Input</td>
<td>Change input assignment between the input selectors and HDMI IN jacks. (p132)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Video Input</td>
<td>Change input assignment between the input selectors and COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks and the VIDEO IN jacks. (p133)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Digital Audio Input</td>
<td>Change input assignment between the input selectors and DIGITAL IN COAXIAL/OPTICAL jacks. (p134)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Analog Audio Input</td>
<td>Change input assignment between the input selectors and AUDIO IN jacks. (p134)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Speaker</td>
<td>1. Configuration</td>
<td>Change the settings of connection environment of the speakers. (p135)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Crossover</td>
<td>Change the settings of crossover frequencies. (p136)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. Distance</td>
<td>Set the distance from each speaker to the listening position. (p137)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. Level Calibration</td>
<td>Adjust the volume level of each speaker. (p138)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Dolby Enabled Speaker</td>
<td>Change the settings of Dolby Enabled Speakers. (p139)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. Equalizer Settings</td>
<td>You can adjust the output volume of the range for each connected speaker. (p139)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. THX Audio</td>
<td>Change the THX Audio settings. (p140)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. Speaker Virtualizer</td>
<td>The Speaker Virtualizer function can be switched between On and Off. (p141)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Audio Adjust</td>
<td>1. Multiplex/Mono</td>
<td>Change the settings of multiplex audio playback. (p141)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. Dolby</td>
<td>Change the setting of when Dolby signals are input. (p142)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. DTS</td>
<td>Change the setting of when DTS signals are input. (p142)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. LFE Level</td>
<td>Set the low-frequency effect (LFE) level for Dolby Digital series, DTS series, Multichannel PCM, and DSD signals. (p142)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. Volume</td>
<td>Change the Volume settings. (p143)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 4. Source
1. **My Input Volume**
   - Set a volume value for each input selector.  
   - p143
2. **Name Edit**
   - Set an easy name for each input.  
   - p143
3. **Audio Select**
   - Select the prioritized input terminal when multiple audio sources are connected to one input selector.  
   - p144
4. **Video Select**
   - When "TUNER", "NET", or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected, you can set the input from which video is displayed on the TV.  
   - p144

### 5. Hardware
1. **HDMI**
   - Change the settings for the HDMI functions.  
   - p145
2. **Network**
   - Change the settings for the Network functions.  
   - p146
3. **Bluetooth**
   - Change the settings for the Bluetooth function.  
   - p148
4. **Power Management**
   - Change the settings for the power-save function.  
   - p149
5. **12V Trigger**
   - Change the settings for 12V Trigger OUT jack.  
   - p150
6. **Works with SONOS**
   - Change the settings to connect with the Sonos Connect.  
   - p150

### 6. Multi Zone
1. **Zone 2**
   - Change the settings for Zone 2.  
   - p152
2. **Zone 3**
   - Change the settings for Zone 3.  
   - p152
3. **Remote Play Zone**
   - Change the settings for remote play.  
   - p152

### 7. Miscellaneous
1. **Tuner**
   - Change the frequency step for the tuner.  
   - p153
2. **Remote ID**
   - Change the remote controller ID.  
   - p153
3. **Firmware Update**
   - Change the settings for Firmware Update.  
   - p153
4. **Initial Setup**
   - Make the initial setup from the setup menu.  
   - p153
5. **Lock**
   - Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed.  
   - p153
6. **Factory Reset**
   - All the settings are restored to factory defaults.  
   - p154
Menu operations

Use the on-screen displays (OSD) that appear on the TV to make the settings. Press \( \bullet \) on the remote controller to display the Setup menu.

Select the item with the cursors \( \uparrow / \downarrow \) of the remote controller, and press the ENTER button to confirm your selection.

Use the cursors \( \leftarrow / \rightarrow \) to change the default values.

- To return to the previous screen, press the \( \Rightarrow \) button.
- To exit the settings, press the \( \bigcirc \) button.
## 1. Input/Output Assign

### 1. TV Out / OSD

Make settings for TV output and On-Screen Displays (OSD) that appear on the TV.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| HDMI Out       | MAIN          | Select the HDMI jack to be connected with the TV.  
*MAIN*: When connecting the TV to the HDMI OUT MAIN jack  
*SUB*: When connecting the TV to the HDMI OUT SUB jack  
*MAIN+SUB*: When connecting to both the MAIN and SUB jacks  
  - If devices with different resolutions are connected to HDMI OUT MAIN jack and SUB jack, images are output with the lower resolution. |
| Dolby Vision   | MAIN          | To output Dolby Vision video from the player to a TV that supports Dolby Vision, select either the HDMI OUT MAIN jack or HDMI OUT SUB jack to which the Dolby Vision-supported TV is connected. This setting is only necessary if you have set "HDMI Out" to "MAIN+SUB" and you have connected a TV to both the MAIN and SUB jacks.  
*MAIN*: To output Dolby Vision video to a Dolby Vision-supported TV connected to the HDMI OUT MAIN jack.  
*SUB*: To output Dolby Vision video to a Dolby Vision-supported TV connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack.  
  - After selecting "MAIN" or "SUB", if the video on the TV does not appear correctly, set this to "Off". |
| 1080p -> 4K Upscaling | Off          | When a TV supporting 4K is used, video signals input with 1080p can be automatically output with 4K.  
"Off": When this function is not used  
"Auto": When this function is used  
If your TV does not support 4K, set it to "Off".  
  - If the TV does not support the 4K resolution with the same frequency as the frequency of HDMI input video signals, upscaling to 4K is not correctly performed. Check the frequency of 4K resolution supported by the TV, and change the resolution of the video signals input from the AV component. |
| Super Resolution | 2            | When "1080p -> 4K Upscaling" is set to "Auto", select the correction level of the input video signals from "Off" and "1" (weak) to "3" (strong). |
| Zone 2 HDMI     | Not Use       | Make the setting when you output to the Zone 2 TV connected to the HDMI OUT ZONE 2/SUB jack.  
"Use": Enable this function  
"Not Use": Disable this function  
  - When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set it to "Use". |
| OSD Language    | English       | Select the on-screen display language from the following.  
(North American models) English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Swedish  
(Asian models) English, German, French, Spanish, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Russian, Chinese |
| Impose OSD      | On            | Set whether or not to display information such as volume adjustment or switching of input on the TV screen.  
"On": OSD is displayed on the TV.  
"Off": OSD is not displayed on the TV.  
  - OSD may not be displayed depending on the input signal even if "On" is selected. In this case, change the resolution of the connected device. |
### Mini Player OSD

Default Value: Always On

You can display on the TV the images from another input selected last while playing the audio from NET or BLUETOOTH input. After switching the input to NET or BLUETOOTH, play the images and audio. And then when you press MODE on the remote controller, the image is displayed in full-screen mode, and the audio information (Mini Player) for NET or BLUETOOTH is displayed in the corner of the screen. You can set whether to always display this Mini Player on the screen.

- **Always On**: The Mini Player is always displayed.
- **Auto Off**: The Mini Player turns off automatically in 30 seconds after displayed. If operation such as changing the volume is performed, it is displayed again for 30 seconds.
  - Each time the MODE button is pressed, the image display/non-display can be switched.
  - This setting cannot be selected if "Impose OSD" is set to "Off".
  - This function cannot be used when "OSD Language" is set to Chinese. (Asian models)

### Screen Saver

Default Value: 3 minutes

Set the time to start the screen saver. Select a value from "3 minutes", "5 minutes", "10 minutes" and "Off".

---

### 2. HDMI Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and HDMI IN jacks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BD/DVD</td>
<td>HDMI 1 (HDCP 2.2)</td>
<td>Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the BD/DVD button. If you do not assign a jack, select &quot;---&quot;. To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to &quot;---&quot; first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td>HDMI 2 (HDCP 2.2)</td>
<td>Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the GAME button. If you do not assign a jack, select &quot;---&quot;. To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to &quot;---&quot; first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBL/SAT</td>
<td>HDMI 3 (HDCP 2.2)</td>
<td>Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the CBL/SAT button. If you do not assign a jack, select &quot;---&quot;. To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to &quot;---&quot; first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRM BOX</td>
<td>HDMI 4 (HDCP 2.2)</td>
<td>Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the STRM BOX button. If you do not assign a jack, select &quot;---&quot;. To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to &quot;---&quot; first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>HDMI 5 (HDCP 2.2)</td>
<td>Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the PC button. If you do not assign a jack, select &quot;---&quot;. To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to &quot;---&quot; first.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>Assign a desired HDMI IN jack to the CD button. If you do not assign a jack, select &quot;---&quot;. To select an HDMI IN jack already assigned to another input selector, change its setting to &quot;---&quot; first.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3. Video Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks and the VIDEO IN jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BD/DVD</td>
<td>COMPONENT</td>
<td>&quot;COMPONENT&quot;: Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the BD/DVD button. &quot;VIDEO 1&quot;, &quot;VIDEO 2&quot;: Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the BD/DVD button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;COMPONENT&quot;: Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the GAME button. &quot;VIDEO 1&quot;, &quot;VIDEO 2&quot;: Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the GAME button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBL/SAT</td>
<td>VIDEO 1</td>
<td>&quot;COMPONENT&quot;: Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the CBL/SAT button. &quot;VIDEO 1&quot;, &quot;VIDEO 2&quot;: Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the CBL/SAT button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRM BOX</td>
<td>VIDEO 2</td>
<td>&quot;COMPONENT&quot;: Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the STRM BOX button. &quot;VIDEO 1&quot;, &quot;VIDEO 2&quot;: Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the STRM BOX button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;COMPONENT&quot;: Assign the COMPONENT VIDEO IN jacks to the PC button. &quot;VIDEO 1&quot;, &quot;VIDEO 2&quot;: Assign a desired VIDEO IN jack to the PC button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. Digital Audio Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and DIGITAL IN COAXIAL/OPTICAL jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BD/DVD</td>
<td>COAXIAL</td>
<td>&quot;COAXIAL&quot;, &quot;OPTICAL&quot;: Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the BD/DVD button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;COAXIAL&quot;, &quot;OPTICAL&quot;: Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the GAME button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBL/SAT</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;COAXIAL&quot;, &quot;OPTICAL&quot;: Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the CBL/SAT button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRM BOX</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;COAXIAL&quot;, &quot;OPTICAL&quot;: Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the STRM BOX button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;COAXIAL&quot;, &quot;OPTICAL&quot;: Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the PC button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;COAXIAL&quot;, &quot;OPTICAL&quot;: Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the CD button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>OPTICAL</td>
<td>&quot;COAXIAL&quot;, &quot;OPTICAL&quot;: Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the TV button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHONO</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;COAXIAL&quot;, &quot;OPTICAL&quot;: Assign a desired DIGITAL IN jack to the PHONO button.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Supported sampling rates for PCM signals (stereo, mono) from a digital input are 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz/16bit, 20bit, and 24bit.

5. Analog Audio Input

Change input assignment between the input selectors and AUDIO IN jacks. If you do not assign a jack, select "---".

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BD/DVD</td>
<td>AUDIO 1</td>
<td>&quot;AUDIO 1&quot; to &quot;AUDIO 6&quot;: Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the BD/DVD button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAME</td>
<td>AUDIO 2</td>
<td>&quot;AUDIO 1&quot; to &quot;AUDIO 6&quot;: Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the GAME button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBL/SAT</td>
<td>AUDIO 3</td>
<td>&quot;AUDIO 1&quot; to &quot;AUDIO 6&quot;: Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the CBL/SAT button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STRM BOX</td>
<td>AUDIO 4</td>
<td>&quot;AUDIO 1&quot; to &quot;AUDIO 6&quot;: Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the STRM BOX button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>&quot;AUDIO 1&quot; to &quot;AUDIO 6&quot;: Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the PC button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>AUDIO 5</td>
<td>&quot;AUDIO 1&quot; to &quot;AUDIO 6&quot;: Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the CD button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>AUDIO 6</td>
<td>&quot;AUDIO 1&quot; to &quot;AUDIO 6&quot;: Assign a desired AUDIO IN jack to the TV button.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHONO</td>
<td>PHONO</td>
<td>The setting cannot be changed.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 2. Speaker

#### 1. Configuration

Change the settings of connection environment of the speakers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Speaker Channels</strong></td>
<td>7.1.2 ch</td>
<td>Select &quot;2.1 ch&quot;, &quot;3.1 ch&quot;, &quot;4.1 ch&quot;, &quot;5.1 ch&quot;, &quot;6.1 ch&quot;, &quot;7.1 ch&quot;, &quot;2.1.2 ch&quot;, &quot;3.1.2 ch&quot;, &quot;4.1.2 ch&quot;, &quot;5.1.2 ch&quot;, &quot;6.1.2 ch&quot;, &quot;7.1.2 ch&quot;, &quot;4.1.4 ch&quot; or &quot;5.1.4 ch&quot; to suit the number of speaker channels connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Subwoofer</strong></td>
<td>Yes</td>
<td>Set whether a subwoofer is connected or not. &quot;Yes&quot;: When a subwoofer is connected &quot;No&quot;: When a subwoofer is not connected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height 1 Speaker</strong></td>
<td>Top Middle</td>
<td>Set the speaker type if height speakers are connected to the HEIGHT 1 terminals. Select &quot;Top Middle&quot;, &quot;Top Rear&quot;, &quot;Rear High&quot;, &quot;Dolby Speaker (Front)&quot;, &quot;Dolby Speaker (Surr)&quot;, &quot;Dolby Speaker (Back)&quot;, &quot;Front High&quot; or &quot;Top Front&quot; according to the type and layout of the connected speakers. • This setting cannot be selected under any of following conditions. Set the height speakers type to &quot;Height 2 Speaker&quot;. – &quot;Bi-Amp&quot; is set to &quot;Yes&quot; – When &quot;Speaker Channels&quot; is set to &quot;2.1.2 ch&quot;, &quot;3.1.2 ch&quot;, &quot;4.1.2 ch&quot;, or &quot;5.1.2 ch&quot;, and &quot;Zone Speaker&quot; is set to &quot;Zone 2&quot; • When two sets of height speakers are being used, &quot;Top Rear&quot;, &quot;Rear High&quot;, &quot;Dolby Speaker (Surr)&quot;, and &quot;Dolby Speaker (Back)&quot;, cannot be selected. • &quot;Dolby Speaker (Surr)&quot; and &quot;Dolby Speaker (Back)&quot; can only be selected when surround speakers or surround back speakers are being used, respectively. You can check speakers that you are using on the figure displayed in &quot;Speaker Channels&quot;. • If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in &quot;Speaker Channels&quot; matches the number of connected channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height 2 Speaker</strong></td>
<td>Rear High</td>
<td>Set the speaker type if height speakers are connected to the HEIGHT 2 terminals. Select &quot;Front High&quot;, &quot;Top Front&quot;, &quot;Top Middle&quot;, &quot;Top Rear&quot;, &quot;Rear High&quot;, &quot;Dolby Speaker (Front)&quot; or &quot;Dolby Speaker (Surr)&quot; according to the type and layout of the connected speakers. However, the options selectable for the &quot;Height 1 Speaker&quot; the are as follows. If &quot;Height 1 Speaker&quot; is set to &quot;Front High&quot;: Select from &quot;Top Middle&quot;, &quot;Top Rear&quot;, &quot;Rear High&quot; or &quot;Dolby Speaker (Surr)&quot;. If &quot;Height 1 Speaker&quot; is set to &quot;Top Front&quot; or &quot;Dolby Speaker (Front)&quot;; Select from &quot;Top Rear&quot;, &quot;Rear High&quot; or &quot;Dolby Speaker (Surr)&quot;. If &quot;Height 1 Speaker&quot; is set to &quot;Top Middle&quot;: Fixed to &quot;Rear High&quot;. • &quot;Dolby Speaker (Surr)&quot; can only be selected when surround speakers are being used. You can check speakers that you are using on the figure displayed in &quot;Speaker Channels&quot;. • If an item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check that the settings in &quot;Speaker Channels&quot; matches the number of connected channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zone Speaker</strong></td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Set whether speakers are connected to Zone 2 or Zone 3 speaker terminals. &quot;Zone 2&quot;: When speakers are connected to Zone 2 speaker terminals &quot;Zone 2/Zone 3&quot;: When connecting speaker to both ZONE 2 speaker terminal and ZONE 3 speaker terminals. • This setting cannot be selected under any of following conditions. – When the surround back speakers are used – When 2 sets of height speakers are used &quot;No&quot;: When speakers are not connected to Zone 2 speaker terminals • This setting cannot be selected when &quot;Zone 2 Lineout&quot; is set to &quot;Zone B&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details
---|---|---
Zone 2 Lineout | Zone 2 | Set an output destination of the audio output from ZONE 2 LINE OUT/ZONE B LINE OUT jack.
- “Zone 2”: When connecting a pre-main amplifier in a separate room (ZONE 2)
- “Zone B”: When connecting a pre-main amplifier, transmitter of wireless headphones, etc. to ZONE B
  • This setting is fixed to “Zone 2” when “Zone Speaker” is set to “Zone 2” or “Zone 2/Zone 3”.

Bi-Amp | No | Set whether the front speakers are bi-amp connected.
- “No”: When front speakers are not bi-amp connected
- “Yes”: When front speakers are bi-amp connected
  • This setting will be set to “No” in either of the following cases.
    - When 2 sets of height speakers are used
    - When surround back speakers and height speakers are being used at the same time.
    - When “Zone Speaker” is set to “Zone 2” or “Zone 2/Zone 3”.

Speaker Impedance | 6 ohms or above | Set the impedance (Ω) of the connected speakers.
- “40ohms”: When any of the connected speakers have 4 Ω or more to less than 6 Ω impedance
- “6 ohms or above”: When all the connected speakers have an impedance of 6 Ω or more
  • For impedance, check the indications on the back of the speakers or their instruction manual.

### 2. Crossover

Change the settings of crossover frequencies.
- As for the THX-certified speakers, the following settings are recommended.
  - Crossover frequency → “80 Hz (THX)”
  - “LPF of LFE” → “80 Hz”
  - “Double Bass” → “Off”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Front | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from “40 Hz” to “200 Hz” to start outputting frequencies for each channel.
  - “Full Band”: Full band will be output.
    • If “Configuration” - “Subwoofer” is set to “No”, “Front” is fixed to “Full Band”, and the low pitched range of the other channels is output from the front speakers. Refer to the instruction manual of your speakers to make the setting. |
| Center | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from “40 Hz” to “200 Hz” to start outputting frequencies for each channel.
  - “Full Band”: Full band will be output.
    • “Full Band” can be selected only when “Front” is set to “Full Band”.
    • If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in “Configuration” - “Speaker Channels” matches the number of connected channels. |
| Height 1 | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from “40 Hz” to “200 Hz” to start outputting frequencies for each channel.
  - “Full Band”: Full band will be output.
    • “Full Band” can be selected only when “Front” is set to “Full Band”.
    • If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in “Configuration” - “Speaker Channels” matches the number of connected channels. |
### Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details
--- | --- | ---
Height 2 | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel. *"Full Band": Full band will be output.  
• "Full Band" can be selected only when "Front" is set to "Full Band".  
• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.

Surround | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel. *"Full Band": Full band will be output.  
• "Full Band" can be selected only when "Front" is set to "Full Band".  
• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.

Surround Back | 80 Hz (THX) | Select the crossover frequency from "40 Hz" to "200 Hz" to start outputting frequencies for each channel. *"Full Band": Full band will be output.  
• "Full Band" can be selected only when "Surround" is set to "Full Band".  
• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in "Configuration" - "Speaker Channels" matches the number of connected channels.

LPF of LFE | 120 Hz | Set the low-pass filter for LFE (low-frequency effect) signals in order to pass only the lower frequency signals than the set value, and thus cancel unwanted noises. The low-pass filter is effective only on sources with LFE channel.  
The value from "80 Hz" to "120 Hz" can be set.  
"Off": When this function is not used

### Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details
--- | --- | ---
Double Bass | On | This can be selected only when "Configuration" - "Subwoofer" is set to "Yes" and "Front" is set to "Full Band".  
Bass output is boosted by feeding bass sounds from the front right and left, and center speakers to the subwoofer.  
"On": Bass output is boosted.  
"Off": Bass output is not boosted.  
• This function is not automatically set even if AccuEQ Room Calibration is performed.

### 3. Distance
Set the distance from each speaker to the listening position.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front Left</td>
<td>12.0 ft/3.60 m</td>
<td>Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>12.0 ft/3.60 m</td>
<td>Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front Right</td>
<td>12.0 ft/3.60 m</td>
<td>Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Height 1 Left | 9.0 ft/2.70 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 1 Right | 9.0 ft/2.70 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 2 Left | 9.0 ft/2.70 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 2 Right | 9.0 ft/2.70 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
### 4. Level Calibration

Adjust the volume level of each speaker.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Surround Right</td>
<td>7.0 ft/2.10 m</td>
<td>Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Surr Back Right    | 7.0 ft/2.10 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Surr Back Left     | 7.0 ft/2.10 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Surround Left      | 7.0 ft/2.10 m | Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position. |
| Subwoofer          | 12.0 ft/3.60 m| Specify the distance between each speaker and the listening position. |

- Default values vary depending on the regions.
- The unit of distance can be changed by pressing the MODE button on the remote controller. When using the unit "feet", the setting is available in increments of 0.1 ft from 0.1 ft to 30.0 ft. When using the unit "meter", the setting is available in increments of 0.03 m from 0.03 m to 9.00 m.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front Left</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>Select a value between &quot;-12.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+12.0 dB&quot; (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>Select a value between &quot;-12.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+12.0 dB&quot; (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Front Right</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>Select a value between &quot;-12.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+12.0 dB&quot; (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Height 1 Left      | 0.0 dB        | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 1 Right     | 0.0 dB        | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
| Height 2 Left      | 0.0 dB        | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.  
• Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting. |
Setting Item | Default Value | Setting Details
---|---|---
Height 2 Right | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level. • Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting.
Surround Right | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Surr Back Right | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level. • Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting.
Surr Back Left | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Surround Left | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-12.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.
Subwoofer | 0.0 dB | Select a value between "-15.0 dB" and "+12.0 dB" (in 0.5 dB increments). A test tone will be output each time you change the value. Select the desired level.

### 5. Dolby Enabled Speaker

Change the settings of Dolby Enabled Speakers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dolby Enabled Speaker to Ceiling</td>
<td>6.0 ft/1.80 m</td>
<td>Set the distance between the Dolby Enabled Speaker and the ceiling. Select between &quot;0.1 ft/0.03 m&quot; and &quot;15.0 ft/4.50 m&quot; (0.1 ft/0.03 m units). • The unit of distance (ft/m) is displayed using the unit selected for the &quot;Distance&quot; setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AccuReflex</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>You can enhance the reflection effect of Dolby Enabled Speakers from the ceiling. &quot;Off&quot;: When this function is not used &quot;On&quot;: When this function is used</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• This setting can be selected when "Configuration" - "Height 1 Speaker"/"Height 2 Speaker" is set to "Dolby Speaker".

### 6. Equalizer Settings

You can adjust the output volume of the range for each connected speaker. Adjust the volume of different sound ranges for each speaker. You can set three different equalizers in Preset 1 to 3. The number of frequencies that can be selected for each speaker is up to five bands for the Subwoofer and nine bands for the other speakers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Front</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>After selecting the speaker frequency between &quot;25 Hz&quot; and &quot;16 kHz&quot; with the cursors ▲ / ▼, adjust the volume of that frequency between &quot;-6.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; with ▲ / ▼.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>After selecting the speaker frequency between &quot;25 Hz&quot; and &quot;16 kHz&quot; with the cursors ▲ / ▼, adjust the volume of that frequency between &quot;-6.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; with ▲ / ▼.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7. THX Audio

Change the THX Audio settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Height 1</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>After selecting the speaker frequency between &quot;25 Hz&quot; and &quot;16 kHz&quot; with the cursors ▲ / ▼, adjust the volume of that frequency between &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; with ▲ / ▼. • Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height 2</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>After selecting the speaker frequency between &quot;25 Hz&quot; and &quot;16 kHz&quot; with the cursors ▲ / ▼, adjust the volume of that frequency between &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; with ▲ / ▼. • Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surround</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>After selecting the speaker frequency between &quot;25 Hz&quot; and &quot;16 kHz&quot; with the cursors ▲ / ▼, adjust the volume of that frequency between &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; with ▲ / ▼.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surround Back</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>After selecting the speaker frequency between &quot;25 Hz&quot; and &quot;16 kHz&quot; with the cursors ▲ / ▼, adjust the volume of that frequency between &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; with ▲ / ▼. • Depending on the use of the ZONE speakers, it may not be possible to select this setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subwoofer</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>After selecting the speaker frequency between &quot;25 Hz&quot; and &quot;160 Hz&quot; with the cursors ▲ / ▼, adjust the volume of that frequency between &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+6.0 dB&quot; with ▲ / ▼. • This cannot be selected if &quot;Configuration&quot; - &quot;Subwoofer&quot; is set to &quot;No&quot;. • Depending on the input source or listening mode setting, the desired effect may not be achieved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Depending on the input source or listening mode setting, the desired effect may not be achieved.
### 3. Audio Adjust

#### 1. Multiplex/Mono

Change the settings of multiplex audio playback.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Multiplex Input Channel</td>
<td>Main</td>
<td>Set the audio channel or language to be output when playing multiplex audio or multilingual broadcasts, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Main</em>: Main channel only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sub</em>: Sub channel only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Main/Sub</em>: Main and sub channels are output at the same time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• For multiplex audio broadcasts, pressing the button on the remote controller will display &quot;1+1&quot; on the main unit's display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono Input Channel</td>
<td>Left + Right</td>
<td>Set the input channel when playing in Mono listening mode digital signals such as Dolby Digital or analog/PCM signals recorded in 2 channels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Left</em>: Left channel only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Right</em>: Right channel only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Left + Right</em>: Left and right channels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono Output Speaker</td>
<td>Center</td>
<td>Set the speaker to output monaural audio in the Mono listening mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Center</em>: Audio is output from the center speaker.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Left/Right</em>: Audio is output from the front L/R speakers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• If the item cannot be selected even though connection is correct, check if the setting in &quot;2. Speaker&quot; - &quot;Configuration&quot; - &quot;Speaker Channels&quot; matches the number of connected channels.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 8. Speaker Virtualizer

The Speaker Virtualizer function can be switched between On and Off.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speaker Virtualizer</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>&quot;On&quot;: Listening modes such as T-D that have virtual speaker effects can be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Off&quot;: Listening modes such as T-D that have virtual speaker effects cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 2. Dolby
Change the setting of when Dolby signals are input.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Loudness Management</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>When playing Dolby TrueHD, enable the dialog normalization function which keeps the volume of dialog at a certain level. Note that when this setting is Off, the Late Night function that allows you to enjoy surround at low volumes is fixed to off when playing Dolby Digital Plus/Dolby TrueHD. <em>On</em>: When this function is used. <em>Off</em>: When this function is not used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Center Spread*</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Adjust the width of the sound field of the front channel when playing in Dolby Audio - Surr listening mode. <em>On</em>: The sound field is spread to left and right. <em>Off</em>: The sound field is centralized. • Depending on the speaker settings, &quot;Off&quot; is applied.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This function will not be selectable if the firmware is updated after purchase or the firmware is switched in the product production process. For details of firmware update, see “Additional Function (Firmware Update)” (→p6).

## 3. DTS
Change the setting of when DTS signals are input.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DTS Auto Surround</td>
<td>On</td>
<td>When inputting DTS signals that include extended channel information, the optimum listening mode is automatically selected according to the extended information contained in the input signal and the speaker configuration of this unit when playing in the straight decoding listening mode. <em>On</em>: When this function is used. <em>Off</em>: Audio is played using the same number of channels in the input signal according to the speaker configuration of this unit. • If this function is set to &quot;Off&quot;, the ES Matrix and ES Discrete listening modes cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dialog Control</td>
<td>0 dB</td>
<td>You can increase the volume of dialog portion of the audio up to 6 dB by 1 dB step so that you can hear the dialog easily in noisy atmosphere. • If this function is set to &quot;Off&quot;, the ES Matrix and ES Discrete listening modes cannot be selected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## 4. LFE Level
Set the low-frequency effect (LFE) level for Dolby Digital series, DTS series, Multichannel PCM, and DSD signals.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LFE Level</td>
<td>0 dB</td>
<td>Select the low-frequency effect (LFE) level of each signal from &quot;0 dB&quot; to &quot;-∞ dB&quot;. If the low-frequency effect sound is too strong, select &quot;-20 dB&quot; or &quot;-∞ dB&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. Volume

Change the Volume settings.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Volume Display</td>
<td>Absolute</td>
<td>Switch the volume display between the absolute value and relative value. The absolute value 82.0 is equivalent to the relative value 0.0dB. &quot;Absolute&quot;: Absolute value such as &quot;0.5&quot; and &quot;99.5&quot; &quot;Relative&quot;: Relative value such as &quot;+81.5dB&quot; and &quot;+18.0dB&quot; • If the absolute value is set to 82.0, &quot;82.0Ref&quot; appears on the display.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mute Level</td>
<td>-∞dB</td>
<td>Set the volume lowered from the listening volume when muting is on. Select a value from &quot;+∞dB&quot;, &quot;+40dB&quot; and &quot;+20dB&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Volume</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Set the maximum value to prevent the volume from becoming too loud. Select a value from &quot;Off&quot;, and &quot;50&quot; to &quot;99&quot;. (When &quot;Volume Display&quot; is set to &quot;Absolute&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power On Volume</td>
<td>Last</td>
<td>Set the volume level of when the power is turned on. Select a value from &quot;Last&quot; (Volume level before entering standby mode), &quot;Min&quot;, &quot;0.5&quot; to &quot;99.5&quot; and &quot;Max&quot;. (When &quot;Volume Display&quot; is set to &quot;Absolute&quot;) • You cannot set a higher value than that of &quot;Maximum Volume&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Headphone Level</td>
<td>0.0 dB</td>
<td>Adjust the output level of headphones. Select a value between &quot;+12.0 dB&quot; and &quot;+12.0 dB&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Source

1. My Input Volume

Set a volume value for each input selector.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My Input Volume</td>
<td>Last</td>
<td>Select a value from &quot;Last&quot;, &quot;Min&quot;, &quot;0.5&quot; to &quot;49.5&quot; and &quot;Max&quot;. (When &quot;Volume Display&quot; is set to &quot;Absolute&quot;) • The volume level when the power is turned on is the value set for &quot;Power On Volume&quot;. • To set the volume to the current volume, press the button of the input selector you wish to set for approx. 3 seconds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Name Edit

Set an easy name for each input. The set name appears on the main unit's display. Select the input selector to make the setting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Name Edit</td>
<td>Input name</td>
<td>1. Select a character or symbol with the cursors, and press ENTER. Repeat this operation to input up to 10 characters. &quot;A/a&quot;: Switches between upper and lower cases. (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases) &quot;→&quot;: Moves the cursor in the arrow direction. &quot;←&quot;: Removes a character on the left of the cursor. &quot;J&quot;: Enters a space. • Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters. 2. After inputting, select &quot;OK&quot; with the cursors, and press ENTER. The input name will be saved. To restore the name to the default value, press CLEAR on the remote controller on the input screen. Then while nothing is entered, select &quot;OK&quot;, and press ENTER.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• To name a preset radio station, press TUNER on the remote controller, select AM/FM, and select the preset number.
Audio Select

Select the priority for input selection when multiple audio sources are connected to one input selector, for example, connections to both the "BD/DVD" HDMI IN jack and the "BD/DVD" AUDIO IN jack. The setting can be made for each input selector button. Select the input selector to make the setting. Note that some of the default values cannot be changed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Audio Select</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD/DVD:</td>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td>ARC: When giving priority to the input signal from ARC-compatible TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td>• This item can be selected only when &quot;5. Hardware&quot; - &quot;HDMI - Audio Return Channel&quot; is set to &quot;On&quot; and also the &quot;TV&quot; input is selected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td>&quot;HDMI&quot;: When giving priority to the input signal from HDMI IN jacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CBL/SAT:</td>
<td>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the CBL/SAT input in the &quot;1. Input/Output Assign&quot; - &quot;Audio Input&quot; setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td>&quot;GAME&quot;: When giving priority to the input signal from DIGITAL IN COAXIAL jacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>STRM BOX:</td>
<td>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the STRM BOX input in the &quot;1. Input/Output Assign&quot; - &quot;Audio Input&quot; setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td>&quot;PC&quot;: When giving priority to the input signal from DIGITAL IN OPTICAL jacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AUX:</td>
<td>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the AUX input in the &quot;1. Input/Output Assign&quot; - &quot;Audio Input&quot; setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HDMI</td>
<td>&quot;CD&quot;: When giving priority to the input signal from CD IN jacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Analog</td>
<td>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the Analog input in the &quot;1. Input/Output Assign&quot; - &quot;Audio Input&quot; setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PHONO:</td>
<td>&quot;PHONO&quot;: When giving priority to the input signal from PHONO IN jacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Analog</td>
<td>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the Analog input in the &quot;1. Input/Output Assign&quot; - &quot;Audio Input&quot; setting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TV: OPTICAL</td>
<td>&quot;TV&quot;: When giving priority to the input signal from TV IN jacks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• This item can be selected only when the input to be set is assigned to the TV input in the &quot;1. Input/Output Assign&quot; - &quot;Audio Input&quot; setting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• This cannot be set if the "NET" or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected.

Video Select

When "TUNER", "NET", or "BLUETOOTH" input is selected, you can set the input from which video is displayed on the TV.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Video Select</td>
<td>Last</td>
<td>&quot;Last&quot;: Select the video input played last &quot;BD/DVD&quot;, &quot;GAME&quot;, &quot;CBL/SAT&quot;, &quot;STRM BOX&quot;, &quot;PC&quot;, &quot;AUX&quot;, &quot;CD&quot;, &quot;TV&quot;, &quot;PHONO&quot;: Play the video of each input.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• This setting is effective for an input selector assigned in &quot;1. Input/Output Assign&quot; - &quot;HDMI Input&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• If the OSD language is set to Chinese, you can select this setting only when "TUNER" is selected as input. (Asian models)
## 5. Hardware

### 1. HDMI

Change the settings of the HDMI function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HDMI CEC</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Setting this to &quot;On&quot; enables the input selection link and other link functions with HDMI-connected CEC-compatible device. <em>On</em>: When this function is used <em>Off</em>: When this function is not used When this setting is changed, turn off and then on again the power of all connected devices. • Depending on the TV to use, a link setting may be required on the TV. • This function is effective only when the device is connected to the HDMI OUT MAIN terminal. • Setting this to &quot;On&quot; and closing the operation screen will display the name of the connected CEC-compatible device and &quot;CEC On&quot; on the main unit's display. • When this function is set to &quot;On&quot;, the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate. • If you operate the MASTER VOLUME dial on the main unit when this setting is &quot;On&quot; and audio is output from the TV speakers, audio will be output also from the speakers connected to this unit. To output audio from only either of them, change the setting of this unit or TV, or reduce the volume of this unit. • If abnormal behavior is observed when this is set to &quot;On&quot;, set it to &quot;Off&quot;. • If a connected device is not CEC-compatible, or if you are not sure whether it is compatible, set it to &quot;Off&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Setting Item Default Value Setting Details

#### Audio TV Out
- **Off**
  - You can enjoy audio through the speakers of the TV while this unit is on.
  - "On": When this function is used
  - "Off": When this function is not used
  - This setting is fixed to "Auto" if you set "1. Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out/OSD" - "HDMI Out" or "HDMI" - "HDMI Out" in the "Quick Menu" to "MAIN" or "MAIN+SUB" and set "HDMI CEC" to "On". If you change this setting, set "HDMI CEC" to "Off".
  - Listening mode cannot be changed while "Audio TV Out" is set to "On" and audio is being output from the TV.
  - Depending on your TV or input signal of the connected device, audio may not be output from the TV even if this is set to "On". In such a case, audio is output from the speakers of the unit.
  - Audio is output from this unit if you operate the MASTER VOLUME dial on this unit when audio that is input to this unit is output from your TV speakers. If you do not want to output audio, change the setting of this unit or TV, or reduce the volume of this unit.
  - Depending on your TV or input signal of the connected device, audio may not be output from the TV even if this is set to "On". In such a case, audio is output from the speakers of the unit.
  - When switching between "On" and "Off(Wired)", stop the Network service. Also, when group playback is in process, cancel the group playback once, and then switch the setting.

#### Audio Return Channel
- **Off**
  - You can enjoy the sound of the HDMI-connected ARC-compatible TV through the speakers connected to the unit.
  - "On": When enjoying the TV sound through the speakers of this unit
  - "Off": When not using the ARC function

#### Auto Lip Sync
- **On**
  - Automatically corrects desynchronization between the video and audio signals based on the information from the HDMI Lip-Sync-compatible TV.
  - "On": When enabling the automatic correction function
  - "Off": When not using the automatic correction function

### 2. Network

Change the settings of the Network function.
- When LAN is configured with a DHCP, set "DHCP" to "Enable" to configure the setting automatically. ("Enable" is set by default) To assign fixed IP addresses to each components, you must set "DHCP" to "Disable", assign an address to this unit in the "IP Address" setting, and set information related to your LAN, such as Subnet Mask and Gateway.

#### Setting Item Default Value Setting Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wi-Fi</td>
<td>Off(Wired)</td>
<td>Connect the unit to the network via a wireless LAN router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHCP</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>&quot;Enable&quot;: Auto configuration by DHCP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP Address</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>Displays/Sets the IP address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subnet Mask</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>Displays/Sets the subnet mask.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gateway</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>Displays/Sets the gateway.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNS Server</td>
<td>0.0.0.0</td>
<td>Displays/Sets the primary DNS server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy URL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Displays/Sets the proxy server URL.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Setting Item</td>
<td>Default Value</td>
<td>Setting Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy Port</td>
<td>8080</td>
<td>Displays/Sets the proxy server port number when you input &quot;Proxy URL&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Friendly Name</td>
<td>Onkyo TX-NR797 XXXXXX</td>
<td>Change the model name of this unit which is displayed on the device connected to the network to an easily recognized name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors, and press ENTER.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Repeat this operation to input up to 31 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;A/a&quot;: Switches between upper and lower cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;←&quot; &quot;→&quot;: Moves the cursor in the arrow direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;¬&quot;: Removes a character on the left of the cursor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;()&quot;: Enters a space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. After inputting, select &quot;OK&quot; with the cursors, and press ENTER.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The input name will be saved.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AirPlay Device Name</td>
<td>Onkyo TX-NR797 XXXXXX</td>
<td>Change the model name of this unit which is displayed on the AirPlay-connected device to an easily recognized name.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors, and press ENTER.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Repeat this operation to input up to 31 characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;A/a&quot;: Switches between upper and lower cases.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;←&quot; &quot;→&quot;: Moves the cursor in the arrow direction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;¬&quot;: Removes a character on the left of the cursor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;()&quot;: Enters a space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will remove all the input characters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. After inputting, select &quot;OK&quot; with the cursors, and press ENTER.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>The input name will be saved.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• This function cannot be used when registering this unit to Home App.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
AirPlay Password

You can set a password of up to 31 digits so that only users that have input can use AirPlay®.
1. Press ENTER to display the Edit screen.
2. Select a character or symbol with the cursors, and press ENTER.
   Repeat this operation to input up to 31 characters.
   "A/a": Switches between upper and lower cases.
   (Pressing MODE on the remote controller also toggles between upper and lower cases)
   "←" "→": Moves the cursor in the arrow direction.
   "⌫": Removes a character on the left of the cursor.
   "": Enters a space.
3. After inputting, select "OK" with the cursors, and press ENTER.
The input password will be saved.

Privacy Statement

When using a network service that requires a login name, email address, password, etc., you need to agree to the Privacy Statement of our company.

Network Check

You can check the network connection.
Press ENTER when "Start" is displayed.

• Wait for a while if "Network" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.
## 4. Power Management

Change the settings for the power-save function.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pairing Information</td>
<td></td>
<td>You can initialize the pairing information stored on this unit. Pressing ENTER when &quot;Clear&quot; is displayed initializes the pairing information stored on this unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• This function does not initialize the pairing information on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. When pairing the unit again with the device, be sure to clear the pairing information on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device beforehand. For information on how to clear the pairing information, refer to the instruction manual of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device</td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the name of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device connected to the unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• The name is not displayed when &quot;Status&quot; is &quot;Ready&quot; and &quot;Pairing&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Status</td>
<td></td>
<td>Displays the status of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device connected to the unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;Ready&quot;: Not paired &quot;Pairing&quot;: Paired &quot;Connected&quot;: Successfully connected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sleep Timer</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>You can allow the unit to enter standby automatically when the specified time has elapsed. Select a value from &quot;30 minutes&quot;, &quot;60 minutes&quot; and &quot;90 minutes&quot;. &quot;Off&quot;: The unit does not automatically enter standby mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Standby</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>This setting allows the unit to enter standby mode automatically after 20 minutes of inactivity without any video or audio input. (When &quot;USB Power Out at Standby&quot; or &quot;Network Standby&quot; is enabled, the unit enters the HYBRID STANDBY mode which minimizes the increase in power consumption.) &quot;On&quot;: The unit automatically enters standby mode (&quot;AUTO STBY&quot; lights up). &quot;Off&quot;: The unit does not automatically enter standby mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• &quot;Auto Standby&quot; is displayed on the main unit’s display and TV screen 30 seconds before entering standby mode.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• &quot;Auto Standby&quot; does not work when ZONE 2/ZONE 3 is active.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Default values vary depending on the regions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auto Standby in HDMI Standby Through</td>
<td>On/Off</td>
<td>Enable or disable &quot;Auto Standby&quot; while &quot;HDMI Standby Through&quot; is on. &quot;On&quot;: The setting is enabled. &quot;Off&quot;: The setting is disabled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• This setting cannot be set to &quot;On&quot; if &quot;Auto Standby&quot; and &quot;HDMI Standby Through&quot; are set to &quot;Off&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Default values vary depending on the regions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• Wait for a while if "Bluetooth" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the BLUETOOTH function is activated.
## Setting Item Default Value Setting Details

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **USB Power Out at Standby** | Off           | When this function is set to "On", electricity can be supplied to the device connected to the USB port even if this unit is in standby mode.  
  - When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.  
  - When connection to the network is lost, "Network Standby" may be disabled to reduce power consumption. In such a case, turn the unit on by using the power button on the remote controller or main unit. |
| **Network Standby**          | On            | When this function is set to "On", the network function works even in standby state, and you can turn on the power of the unit via network using an application such as Onkyo Controller that can control this unit.  
  - When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.  
  - This setting is fixed to "Off" if "Bluetooth" - "Auto Input Change" is set to "Off".  
  - Wait for a while if "Network Standby" and "Bluetooth Wakeup" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated. |
| **Bluetooth Wakeup**         | Off           | This function wakes up the unit on standby by connecting a BLUETOOTH-enabled device.  
  - "On": When this function is used  
  - "Off": When this function is not used  
  - When this function is set to "On", the power consumption in standby state increases, however, the increase in power consumption is minimized by automatically entering the HYBRID STANDBY mode where only the essential circuits operate.  
  - This setting is fixed to "Off" if "Bluetooth" - "Auto Input Change" is set to "Off".  
  - Set which zone to output the 12V trigger when playing. If you select "All", then the 12V trigger is output to all zones that are playing. |

### 5. 12V Trigger

Set when outputting the control signal (maximum 12 V/100 mA) through the 12V TRIGGER OUT jack. You can enable power link operation when you connect the unit and the external devices equipped with 12V trigger input jack.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Zone</strong></td>
<td>Main</td>
<td>Set which zone to output the 12V trigger when playing. If you select &quot;All&quot;, then the 12V trigger is output to all zones that are playing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Works with SONOS

Change the settings to connect with the Sonos Connect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Input Selector   | Off           | Select the input selector to which the Sonos Connect is connected. 
• Selecting “Off” disables the interlock function with Sonos. |

| Connected Device | -             | Displays the Sonos Connect connected to the same network as the network of this unit. Press the ENTER button to select the connected Sonos Connect.  
• Products (e.g. Play:3 unequipped with an output terminal) other than the Sonos Connect are also displayed in the device list and selectable. In that case, when playback on the Sonos side starts, the input is switched, however, audio is not output. Select the room name of the connected Sonos Connect. 
• Up to 32 devices can be displayed on the Sonos product list screen. If you cannot find the Sonos Connect to be interlocked, return to the previous screen, turn off the product you want to interlock, and try again. 
• To use this function, set “Input Selector” beforehand. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Output Zone      | Main          | Select the zone where you want to listen to the music. 
• “Main”: Outputs audio only to the main room (where this unit is located). 
• “Zone 2”: Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 2). 
• “Main/Zone 2”: Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room. 
• “Zone 3”: Outputs audio only to the separate room (ZONE 3). 
• “Main/Zone 3”: Outputs audio to both the main room and separate room (ZONE 3). 
• “Zone 2/Zone 3”: Outputs audio to both the separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3). 
• “Main/Zone 2/Zone 3”: Outputs audio to the main room and both separate rooms (ZONE 2 and ZONE 3). 
• To use this function, set “Input Selector” beforehand. |

| Preset Volume    | Main: Last | You can set the volume beforehand for playing back the Sonos Connect. You can set volumes for the main room (where this unit is located) and separate room (ZONE 2 or ZONE 3) respectively. Select a value from “Last” (Volume level before entering standby mode), “Min”, “0.5” to “99.5” and “Max”. 
• To use this function, set “Input Selector” beforehand. |
6. Multi Zone

1. Zone 2

Change the settings for Zone 2.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Volume</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Set the maximum value for Zone 2 to prevent the volume from becoming too loud. Select a value from &quot;Off&quot;, and &quot;50&quot; to &quot;99&quot;. (When &quot;3. Audio Adjust&quot; - &quot;Volume&quot; - &quot;Volume Display&quot; is set to &quot;Absolute&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power On Volume</td>
<td>Last</td>
<td>Set the Zone 2 volume level of when the unit is turned on. Select a value from &quot;Last&quot; (Volume level when the unit was turned off), &quot;Min&quot;, &quot;0.5&quot; to &quot;99.5&quot; and &quot;Max&quot;. (When &quot;3. Audio Adjust&quot; - &quot;Volume&quot; - &quot;Volume Display&quot; is set to &quot;Absolute&quot;) • You cannot set a higher value than that of &quot;Maximum Volume&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Zone 3

Change the settings for Zone 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maximum Volume</td>
<td>Off</td>
<td>Set the maximum value for Zone 3 to prevent the volume from becoming too loud. Select a value from &quot;Off&quot;, and &quot;50&quot; to &quot;99&quot;. (When &quot;3. Audio Adjust&quot; - &quot;Volume&quot; - &quot;Volume Display&quot; is set to &quot;Absolute&quot;)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power On Volume</td>
<td>Last</td>
<td>Set the Zone 3 volume level of when the unit is turned on. Select a value from &quot;Last&quot; (Volume level when the unit was turned off), &quot;Min&quot;, &quot;0.5&quot; to &quot;99.5&quot; and &quot;Max&quot;. (When &quot;3. Audio Adjust&quot; - &quot;Volume&quot; - &quot;Volume Display&quot; is set to &quot;Absolute&quot;) • You cannot set a higher value than that of &quot;Maximum Volume&quot;.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. Miscellaneous

1. Tuner
Change the frequency step for the tuner.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AM/FM Frequency Step</td>
<td>10 kHz/0.2 MHz</td>
<td>Select a frequency step to suit your residential area. Select &quot;10 kHz/0.2 MHz&quot; or &quot;9 kHz/0.05 MHz&quot;. When this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AM Frequency Step (Asian models)</td>
<td>9 kHz</td>
<td>Select a frequency step to suit your residential area. Select &quot;10 kHz&quot; or &quot;9 kHz&quot;. When this setting is changed, all radio presets are deleted.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Remote ID
Change the remote controller ID.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Remote ID</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>If multiple ONKYO products are installed in the same room, select the ID for the remote control used with this unit from &quot;1&quot;, &quot;2&quot; and &quot;3&quot; to prevent interference between the unit and other ONKYO products. After changing the ID on the main unit, set the same ID on the remote controller as the main unit with the following procedure. While pressing and holding the MODE button, press the following buttons for approx. 3 seconds: To change the remote controller ID to &quot;1&quot;: MOVIE/TV To change the remote controller ID to &quot;2&quot;: MUSIC To change the remote controller ID to &quot;3&quot;: GAME</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Firmware Update
Change the settings for Firmware Update.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Update Notice</td>
<td>Enable</td>
<td>Availability of a firmware update is notified via network. &quot;Enable&quot;: Notify updates &quot;Disable&quot;: Do not notify updates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Version</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>The current firmware version is displayed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update via NET</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Press ENTER to select when updating the firmware via network. This setting cannot be selected if you do not have Internet access or there is no updatable firmware.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Update via USB</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Press ENTER to select when updating the firmware via USB. This setting cannot be selected if a USB storage device is not connected or there is no updatable firmware in the USB storage device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Wait for a while if "Firmware Update" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

4. Initial Setup
Make the initial setup from the setup menu.
- Wait for a while if "Initial Setup" cannot be selected. It can be selected when the network function is activated.

5. Lock
Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Setup Parameter</td>
<td>Unlocked</td>
<td>Lock the Setup menu so that the settings cannot be changed. &quot;Locked&quot;: The menu is locked. &quot;Unlocked&quot;: The menu is unlocked.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. Factory Reset

All the settings are restored to factory defaults.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Setting Item</th>
<th>Default Value</th>
<th>Setting Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Factory Reset</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>All the settings are restored to factory defaults. Select &quot;Start&quot; and press ENTER. If &quot;Factory Reset&quot; is performed, your settings are restored to the default values. Be sure to note down your setting contents beforehand.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You can quickly adjust the settings you frequently use, such as tone adjustments, etc.

You can make the settings on the TV screen during playback. Press Q on the remote controller to display the Quick Menu.

Select the item with the cursors ▲/▼ of the remote controller, and press the ENTER button to confirm your selection.

Use the cursors to change the settings.
• To return to the previous screen, press ➔.
• To exit the settings, press Q.

**HDMI**

**HDMI Out**: Select the HDMI OUT jack to output video signals from "MAIN", "SUB", and "MAIN+SUB".

**A/V Sync**: If the video is behind the audio, you can delay the audio to offset the gap. The setting can be set for each input. It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct.

**Audio Return Channel**: You can enjoy the sound of the HDMI-connected ARC-compatible TV through the speakers connected to the unit. Select "On" when listening to the audio of TV using the speakers of this unit. Select "Off" when the ARC function is not used.

**Audio**

**Music Optimizer**: Improve the quality of the compressed audio. Playback sound
of lossy compressed files such as MP3 will be improved. The setting can be set for each input. This works in signals whose sampling frequencies are 48 kHz or less. The setting is not effective in the bitstream signals.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct.

**Late Night:** Enable small sounds to be easily heard in detail. It is useful when you need to reduce the volume while watching a movie late night. You can enjoy the effect only when playing the Dolby series and DTS series input signals.

- This function cannot be used in the following cases.
  - When playing Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD with "Loudness Management" set to "Off"
  - When the input signal is DTS:X, and "Dialog Control" is not 0 dB

**Stereo Assign:** When the listening mode is set to "Stereo", the audio output destination can be set to "Surround", "Surround Back", "Height 1" or "Height 2" in addition to the normal right and left channels ("Front") of front speakers.

- This function cannot be used if the listening mode is set to modes other than "Stereo".
- You cannot select speakers that are not set with "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" on the Setup menu.

**Zone B:** Select a method of outputting audio to ZONE B from among "Off", "On(A+B)" and "On(B)".

- In the following cases, "Zone B" cannot be selected.
  - When ZONE 2 is On
  - When "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" on the Setup menu is set to "Zone 2" (→p136)

**AccuEQ**

**AccuEQ:** Enable or disable the equalizer function that corrects for sound distortion caused by the acoustic environment of the room. To enable this setting, normally select "On (All Ch)", and to disable only the front speakers, select "On (ex. L/R)". The setting can be set for each input.

**Manual Equalizer:** Select "Preset 1" to "Preset 3" configured in "2. Speaker" - "Equalizer Settings" on the Setup menu. When this is set to "Off", the same sound field setting is applied to all ranges.

**Re-EQ, Re-EQ(THX):** Adjusts the soundtrack with the enhanced high range so that it suits a home theater. The following listening modes can be used for Re-EQ: Dolby Audio - DD, Dolby Audio - DD+, Dolby Audio - Surr, Dolby Audio - TrueHD, Multichannel, DTS, DTS-ES, DTS 96/24, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS Neural:X, DTS Express and DSD

In Re-EQ(THX), the following listening modes can be used: THX Cinema and THX Select Cinema.

- It cannot be set if the listening mode is Direct.

**EQ for Standing Wave:** Setting this "On" will control the effect of the standing wave generated by the sound wave reflected by wall or similar interfering with the original sound wave.

**Level**

**Front:** Adjust the speaker level of the front speakers while listening to the sound.

**Center:** Adjust the speaker level of the center speaker while listening to the sound.

**Subwoofer:** Adjust the speaker level of the subwoofer while listening to the sound.

- If you set the unit to the standby mode, the adjustments you made will be restored to the previous statuses.
Web Setup

Menu operations

You can make the settings for the network function of this unit using an Internet browser on a PC, smartphone, etc.

1. Press 🛋 on the remote controller to display the Setup menu.
2. Select "5. Hardware" - "Network" with the cursors, and then take a note of the IP address displayed in "IP Address".
3. Start the Internet browser on your PC, smartphone, etc. and enter the IP address of this unit in the URL field.
4. Information for the unit (Web Setup screen) is displayed in the Internet browser.

5. After changing the settings, select "Save" to save the settings.

Device Information
You can change the Friendly Name or AirPlay Device Name, set an AirPlay Password, etc.

Control4: Register this unit if you are using a Control4 system.
Firmware Update: Select the firmware file you have downloaded to your PC so you can update this unit.

Network Setting
Status: You can see information for the network such as the MAC address and IP address of this unit.

Network Connection: You can select a network connection method. If you select "Wireless", select an access point from "Wi-Fi Setup" to connect.
DHCP: You can change DHCP settings. If you select "Off", set "IP Address", "Subnet Mask", "Gateway" and "DNS Server" manually.
Proxy: Display and set the URL for the proxy server.
When you turn the unit on for the first time after purchase, the Initial Setup screen is automatically displayed on the TV to allow you to make settings required for startup using simple operations following on-screen guidance.

1. Switch the input of the TV to the input connected to the unit.
2. Put batteries into the remote controller of this unit.
3. Press $\bigcirc$ on the remote controller to turn the unit on.
4. When the language selection screen is displayed on TV, select the language with the cursors $\uparrow \downarrow$ and press ENTER.

- Select the item with the cursors of the remote controller, and press ENTER to confirm your selection. To return to the previous screen, press $\Rightarrow$.
- If you have terminated the Initial Setup halfway, turn this unit to standby mode and turn the power on again. Then you can display the Initial Setup again. The Initial Setup appears on the screen each time the power is turned on unless the Initial Setup is completed or "Never Show Again" is selected on the first screen.
- To perform the Initial Setup again after the setting is completed, press $\bigcirc$, select "7. Miscellaneous" - "Initial Setup", and press ENTER.
1. Speaker Setup

1. Select the connected speaker configuration and press ENTER.
   Note that the image on the screen changes each time you select the number of channels in "Speaker Channels".

2. The speaker combination selected in step 1 is displayed. "Yes" is displayed for the selected speakers. If the setting is correct, press ENTER.

3. Select "Next" and press ENTER. Then a test tone is output from each speaker to confirm the connection. Selecting each speaker with the cursors ▲ / ▼ will output the test tone. Press ENTER after confirmation.

4. If there is no problem with the speaker connection, select "Next" and press ENTER. To return to "Speaker Setup", select "Back to Speaker Setup" and press ENTER.

2. AccuEQ Room Calibration

Place the supplied speaker setup microphone at the listening position. The unit automatically measures the test tones output from each speaker, and sets the optimum volume level for each speaker, the crossover frequencies, and the distance from the listening position. This also reduces the effect of the standing wave in accordance with the viewing environment and automatically adjusts the equalizers for the speakers, and enables correction of sound distortion caused by the acoustic environment of the room.

- It takes between 3 and 12 minutes for calibration to be completed. Each speaker outputs the test tone at high volume during measurement, so be careful of your surroundings. Also, keep the room as quiet as possible during measurement.
- If you connect a subwoofer, check the power and volume of the subwoofer.

Set the subwoofer volume to more than half.
- If the power of this unit suddenly turns off, the wires in the speaker cables have touched the rear panel or other wires, and the protection circuit is working. Twist the wires again securely, and make sure they do not stick out of the speaker terminals when connecting.
- When using THX certified speakers, THX recommends that the crossover frequency is set to "80Hz(THX)". Also, THX recommends that each speaker setting is manually adjusted according to the specific characteristics of each room.

1. Place the supplied speaker setup microphone at the listening position, and connect it to the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit.

When placing the speaker setup microphone on a tripod, refer to the illustration.

2. Confirm a test tone is output from the subwoofer and press ENTER.

3. Press ENTER to output test tones from each speaker, and the connected speakers and the noise in the surrounding environment are automatically measured.

4. The measurement results in step 3 are displayed. If there is no problem in the detection result of the speaker, select "Next" and press ENTER to output the test tone again to automatically set the settings such as volume level, crossover frequency, etc., to their optimum. (The test tone is automatically output when 10 seconds has elapsed without any operation.)

- When an error message is displayed or when the connected speakers cannot be detected, perform re-measurement by selecting "Retry" and pressing ENTER.
- When it cannot be resolved by performing the re-measurement, confirm if the speakers are connected correctly. If there is any problem with the
speaker connection, perform the connection after disconnecting the power cord.

5. Once the measurement is completed, it is possible to perform the measurement in 8 additional listening positions. To perform the measurement, select "Next" and press ENTER, then follow the instructions. To not perform the measurement, select "Finish (Calculate)" and press ENTER.
   • After each listening position is detected, select "Finish (Calculate)" and press ENTER to complete the detection process.

6. Disconnect the speaker setup microphone.

■ 3. Multi Zone Sound Check
Output test tones to ZONE 2 to enjoy audio in a separate room (ZONE 2) in addition to the main room.

■ 4. ARC Setup
To connect with an ARC-compatible TV, select "Yes". The ARC setting on this unit turns on, and you can listen to the TV's audio through this unit.
   • Pressing "Yes" turns the HDMI CEC function on, and the power consumption in standby mode will increase.

■ 5. Network Connection
1. To make the network connection settings, select "Yes" and press ENTER.
   • A confirmation screen asking you whether to agree to the privacy statement is displayed during network setting. If you agree, select "Accept" and press ENTER.

2. Select the network connection method and press ENTER.
   "Wired": Use a wired LAN to connect to a network.
   "Wireless": Wi-Fi connection using an access point such as a wireless LAN router.
   • There are two methods for Wi-Fi connection.
     "Scan Networks": Search for an access point from this unit. Find out the SSID of the access point beforehand.
     "Use iOS Device (iOS7 or later)" : Share the Wi-Fi settings of your iOS device with this unit.
   • If you select "Scan Networks", there are another two types of connection methods. Check the following.
     "Enter Password": Enter the password (or key) of the access point to connect.
     "Push Button": If the access point is equipped with an automatic setting button, you can connect without entering the password.
   • If the SSID of the access point is not displayed, select "Other..." with the cursor on the SSID list screen, press ENTER, and then follow the on-screen instructions.

Keyboard Input
To switch between upper and lower cases, select "A/a" on the screen, and press ENTER on the remote controller. To select whether to mask the password with "*" or display it in plain text, press MEMORY on the remote controller. Pressing CLEAR on the remote controller will delete all the input characters.
Troubleshooting

Before starting the procedure
Problems may be solved by simply turning the power on/off or disconnecting/connecting the power cord, which is easier than working on the connection, setting and operating procedure. Try the simple measures on both the unit and the connected device. If the problem is that the video or audio is not output or the HDMI linked operation does not work, disconnecting/connecting the HDMI cable may solve it. When reconnecting, be careful not to wind the HDMI cable since if wound the HDMI cable may not fit well. After reconnecting, turn off and on the unit and the connected device.

• The AV receiver contains a microPC for signal processing and control functions. In very rare situations, severe interference, noise from an external source, or static electricity may cause it to lockup. In the unlikely event that this happens, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet, wait at least 5 seconds, and then plug it back in.

• Our company is not responsible for damages (such as CD rental fees) due to unsuccessful recordings caused by the unit’s malfunction. Before you record important data, make sure that the material will be recorded correctly.

When the unit is operating erratically 162
Try restarting the unit 162
Resetting the unit 163
(this resets the unit settings to the default)

Troubleshooting 164

■ Power 164
■ Audio 164
■ Listening Modes 166
■ Video 167
■ Linked operation 167

■ Tuner 168
■ BLUETOOTH function 168
■ Network function 169
■ USB storage device 170
■ Wireless LAN Network 170
■ ZONE B function 171
■ Multi-zone function 171
■ Remote Controller 171
■ Display 171
■ Others 172
When the unit is operating erratically

- **Try restarting the unit**
  
  Restarting this unit may solve the problem. After turning the unit to standby mode, press and hold the ON/STANDBY button of the main unit for at least 5 seconds, and then restart the unit. (The settings on this unit are kept.) If the problem persists after restarting the unit, unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and connected devices or HDMI cable.
Resetting the unit (this resets the unit settings to the default)

If the restart of the unit does not solve the problem, reset the unit, and restore all the settings to the factory default at the time of purchase. This may solve the problem. If the unit is reset, your settings are restored to the default values. Be sure to note down your setting contents before performing the following operations.

1. While pressing and holding CBL/SAT of the input selector on the main unit with the unit turned on, press the "ON/STANDBY button.
2. "Clear" is displayed on the display, and the unit returns to the standby state. Do not remove the power cord until "Clear" disappears from the display.

To reset the remote controller, while pressing and holding MODE, press the CLEAR button at least 3 seconds.
Troubleshooting

Power

- **When the power is turned on, "AMP Diag Mode" appears on the display of the main unit.**
  - The protection circuit function may have operated. If the unit suddenly enters the standby state and "AMP Diag Mode" appears on the display of the main unit when the power is turned on again, this function is diagnosing whether or not the main unit is malfunctioning or there is an abnormality with the speaker cable connection. When the diagnosis is complete, the following messages are displayed.

  | CH SP WIRE | If the unit returns to the normal ON state after "CH SP WIRE" appears on the display, the speaker cable may have been short-circuited. After setting the power of this unit to standby state, connect the speaker cable again. Twist the wires exposed from the tip of the speaker cable so that the wires do not stick out of the speaker terminal. |
  | NG:***** | If the operation has stopped with "NG" displayed on the display, set the power of this unit to standby state immediately and remove the power plug from the outlet. The unit may be malfunctioning. Consult a dealer. |

- **The unit turns off unexpectedly**
  - If "5. Hardware" - "Power Management" - "Auto Standby" on the Setup menu is activated, the unit automatically enters the standby mode. (→p149)
  - The protection circuit function may have operated due to an abnormal rise in temperature of the unit. In such a case, the power turns off repeatedly even if the power is turned on each time. Secure sufficient ventilation space around the unit, wait for a while until the temperature of the unit decreases. Then, turn the power on again.

  **WARNING**: If smoke, smell or abnormal noise is produced by the unit, unplug the power cord from the outlet immediately, and contact the dealer or our company's support.

Audio

- Make sure that the speaker setup microphone is no longer connected.
- Confirm that the connection between the output jack on the connected device and the input jack on this unit is correct.
- Make sure that none of the connecting cables are bent, twisted, or damaged.
- If the MUTE indicator on the display blinks, press on the remote controller to cancel muting.
- While headphones are connected to the PHONES jack, no sound is output from the speakers.
- When "4. Source" - "Audio Select" - "PCM Fixed Mode" on the Setup menu is set to "On", audio is not played if signals other than PCM are input. Change the setting to Off.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

- **No sound from the TV**
  - Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the terminal to which the TV is connected.
  - If the TV does not support the ARC function, along with the connection by an HDMI cable, connect the TV with this unit using a digital optical cable or analog audio cable. (→p52)
No sound from a connected player

- Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the jack to which the player is connected.
- Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some game consoles, such as those supporting DVD, the default setting may be off.
- For some DVD-Video discs, you need to select an audio output format from a menu.

A speaker produces no sound

- Make sure that the polarity (+/-) of the speaker cables is correct, and that no bare wires are in contact with the metal part of speaker terminals.
- Make sure that the speaker cables are not shorting out.
- Check "Connect the Speaker Cables" (→p36) to see if the speaker connections have been made correctly. Settings for the speaker connection environment need to be made in "Speaker Setup" in Initial Setup. Check "Initial Setup with Auto Start-up Wizard" (→p158).
- Depending on the input signal and listening mode, not much sound may be output from speakers. Select another listening mode to see if sound is output.
- If surround back speakers are installed, be sure to install surround speakers as well.
- A maximum of 7.1 ch playback is possible when Bi-Amping connection is used. Be sure to remove the jumper bar on the speakers when using Bi-Amping connection.

The subwoofer produces no sound

If the setting of the front speakers is "Full Band", the low range elements will be output from the front speakers instead of from the subwoofer during 2 ch audio input of TV or music. To output the sound from the subwoofer, make one of the following settings.
1. Change the setting for the front speakers to a setting of crossover frequency value other than "Full Band". The range below the specified frequency will be output from the subwoofer instead of from the front speakers. If your front speakers have a high low-range reproduction capability, changing this setting is not recommended.
2. Change "Double Bass" to "On". The low range elements of the front speakers will be output from both the front speakers and the subwoofer. Due to this, the bass sound may be emphasized too much. In such a case, do not change the setting, or make the setting with the above option 1.
- For the setting details, refer to "2. Speaker" - "Crossover" on the Setup menu.
- If the input signals do not contain subwoofer audio elements (LFE), the subwoofer may produce no sound.

Noise can be heard

- Using cable ties to bundle audio pin cables, power cords, speaker cables, etc. may degrade the audio performance. Do not bundle the cords.
- An audio cable may be picking up interference. Change the position of the cables.

The beginning of audio received by an HDMI IN cannot be heard

- Since it takes longer to identify the format of an HDMI signal than it does for other digital audio signals, audio output may not start immediately.
Sound suddenly reduces
- When using the unit for extended periods with the temperature inside the unit exceeding a certain temperature, the volume may be reduced automatically to protect the circuits.

Sound suddenly changes
- If ZONE 2 is set to on while ZONE B is set to "On(B)", the volume of ZONE A is restored to the default value.
- When "My Input Volume" is set, the volume is set for each input selector. Check "4. Source" - "My Input Volume" on the Setup menu (→p143).

Listening Modes
- To enjoy digital surround playback in formats such as Dolby Digital, you need to make a connection for audio signals with an HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable. Also, audio output need to be set to Bitstream output on the connected Blu-ray Disc player, etc.
- Press \( \text{i} \) on the remote controller several times to switch the display of the main unit, and you can check the input format. Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

Cannot select a desired listening mode
- Depending on the connection status of the speaker, some listening modes may not be selected. Check "Speaker Layouts and Selectable Listening Modes" (→p103) or "Input Formats and Selectable Listening Modes" (→p112) of "Listening Mode".

Cannot listen to the sound in Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS-HD Master Audio format
- If the audio in Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos or DTS-HD Master Audio format cannot be output correctly in the source format, set "BD video supplementary sound" (or reencode, secondary sound, video additional audio, etc.) to "Off" in the setting of a connected Blu-ray Disc player, etc. After changing the setting, switch the listening mode to that for each source, and confirm.

About DTS signals
- With media that switches suddenly from DTS to PCM, PCM playback may not start immediately. In such a case, stop playback on the player side for approx. 3 seconds or more. Then, resume playback. The playback will be performed normally.
- DTS playback may not be performed normally on some CD and LD players even if the player and this unit are digitally connected. If some processing (e.g., output level adjustment, sampling frequency conversion, or frequency characteristic conversion) has been executed for the DTS signal being output, this unit cannot recognize it as a genuine DTS signal, and noise may occur.
- While playing a DTS-compatible disc, if a pause or skip operation is performed on your player, noise may occur for a short period. This is not a malfunction.
Video

• Confirm that the connection between the output jack on the connected device and the input jack on this unit is correct.
• Make sure that none of the connecting cables are bent, twisted, or damaged.
• When the TV image is blurry or unclear, the power cord or connection cables of the unit may have interfered. In such a case, keep distance between TV antenna cable and cables of the unit.
• Check the switching of the input screen on the monitor side such as a TV.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

No image appears

• If a 4K high-quality video is played, use a Premium High Speed HDMI Cable or Premium High Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet whose package has a "PREMIUM Certified Cable" label.
• Change the input selector on this unit to the position of the jack to which the player is connected.

No image from a device connected to HDMI IN jack

• To display video from the connected player on the TV while the unit is in standby, you need to enable "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" - "HDMI Standby Through" on the Setup menu. For details of the HDMI Standby Through function, check "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" on the Setup menu. (→p145)
• To output video to a TV connected to the HDMI OUT SUB jack, press the Q button on the remote controller to display "Quick Menu" and select "HDMI" - "HDMI Out", or press the HDMI MAIN/SUB button on the remote controller and select the HDMI OUT jack.
• Check if "Resolution Error" is displayed on the main unit display when video input via HDMI IN jack is not displayed. In this case, the TV does not support the resolution of the video input from the player. Change the setting on the player.
• Normal operation with an HDMI-DVI adapter is not guaranteed. In addition, video signals output from a PC are not guaranteed.

Images flicker

• The output resolution of the player may not be compatible with the resolution of the TV. If the player is connected to this unit with an HDMI cable, change the output resolution on the player. Also this may be solved by changing the screen mode on the TV.

Video and audio are out of synch

• Depending on the settings on your TV and connection environment, the video may be behind the audio. Press Q on the remote controller to display "Quick Menu", select "HDMI" - "AV Sync", and make the adjustment. (→p155)

Linked operation

• HDMI linked operation does not work with CEC-compliant devices, such as a TV

• In the Setup menu of the unit, set "5. Hardware" - "HDMI" - "HDMI CEC" to "On".
• It is also necessary to set HDMI linking on the CEC-compliant device. Check the instruction manual. (→p145)
■ Tuner

- **Poor reception or much noise**
  - Recheck the antenna connection.
  - Move the antenna away from the speaker cord or power cord.
  - Move the unit away from your TV or PC.
  - Passing cars or airplanes in the vicinity can cause interference.
  - If radio waves are blocked by concrete walls, etc., radio reception may be poor.
  - Change the reception mode to mono (→p89).
  - Operating the remote controller during AM reception may cause noise.
  - FM reception may be clearer if you use the antenna jack on the wall used for the TV.

■ BLUETOOTH function

- Unplug and plug the power cord of the unit, or turn off and on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. Restart of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device may be effective.
- BLUETOOTH-enabled devices must support the A2DP profile.
- Because a radio wave interference will occur, this unit may not be used near devices such as a microwave oven or cordless phone which use the radio wave in the 2.4 GHz range.
- A metallic object near the unit can affect on the radio wave, and BLUETOOTH connection may not be possible.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

- **Cannot connect with this unit**
  - Check if the BLUETOOTH function of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device is enabled. (→p148)

- **Music playback is unavailable on the unit even after successful BLUETOOTH connection**
  - When the audio volume of your BLUETOOTH-enabled device is set low, the audio may not be played back. Turn up the volume of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device.
  - Depending on the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, the Send/Receive selector switch may be equipped. Select Send mode.
  - Depending on the characteristics or specifications of the BLUETOOTH-enabled device, music may not be played back on this unit.

- **Sound is interrupted**
  - There may be a problem with the BLUETOOTH-enabled device. Check the information on a web page.

- **The audio quality is poor after connection with a BLUETOOTH-enabled device**
  - The BLUETOOTH reception is poor. Move the BLUETOOTH-enabled device closer to the unit, or remove any obstacle between the BLUETOOTH-enabled device and this unit.
Network function

- If you cannot select a network service, start up the network function to select it. It may take approx. one minute to start it up.
- When the NET indicator is blinking, this unit is not properly connected to the home network.
- Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the router, or restart the router.
- If the desired router is not displayed in the access point list, it may be set to hide SSID, or the ANY connection may be off. Change the setting and try again.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

- Cannot access the Internet radio
  - In the case the service provider has terminated the service, the network service or contents may not be used on this unit.
  - Check if your modem and router are properly connected, and they are both turned on.
  - Check if the LAN side port on the router is properly connected to this unit.
  - Check if connecting to Internet from other devices is possible. If it is not possible, turn off all devices connected to the network, wait for a while, and then turn on the devices again.
  - Depending on ISP, setting the proxy server is required.
  - Check if the router and modem you are using are supported by your ISP.

- Cannot access the network server
  - This unit needs to be connected to the same router as the network server.
  - This unit supports the Windows Media® Player 11 or 12 network servers, or NASes that support the home network function.
  - Windows Media® Player may require some settings. Refer to "Playing back files on a PC and NAS (Music Server)". (→p78)
  - When using a PC, only the music files registered in the library of Windows Media® Player can be played.

- Sound is interrupted when playing music files on the network server
  - Check if the network server meets the requirements for operation.
  - When the PC is serving as the network server, quit application software other than the server software (Windows Media® Player 12, etc.).
  - If the PC is downloading or copying large files, the playback sound may be interrupted.
USB storage device

USB storage device is not displayed

- Check if the USB storage device or USB cable is securely inserted to the USB port of the unit.
- Disconnect the USB storage device once from the unit, and then reconnect it.
- Performance of the hard disk that receive power from the USB port of the unit is not guaranteed.
- Depending on the type of content, the playback may not be performed normally. Check the types of supported file formats.
- Operations of USB storage devices equipped with security functions are not guaranteed.

Wireless LAN Network

- Unplug and plug the power cords of this unit and the wireless LAN router, check the power-on status of the wireless LAN router, or restart the wireless LAN router.

Check the following if the problem persists after you have confirmed the above.

Cannot access wireless LAN network

- The wireless LAN router setting may be switched to Manual. Restore the setting to Auto.
- Try the manual set-up. The connection may succeed.
- When the wireless LAN router is in stealth mode (mode to hide SSID) or when the ANY connection is off, the SSID is not displayed. Change the setting and try again.
- Check if the SSID and encryption settings (WEP, etc.) are correct. Match the network settings with the settings of this unit.
- Connection to an SSID that includes multi-byte characters is not supported. Set the SSID of the wireless LAN router using single-byte alphanumeric characters only, and try again.

Connected to an SSID different from the selected SSID

- Some wireless LAN routers allow you to set multiple SSIDs for one unit. If connecting to such a router using the automatic setting button, you may end up connecting to an SSID different from the SSID you want to connect to. If this occurs, use the connection method requiring you to enter a password.

Playback sound is interrupted, or communication is not possible

- You may not receive radio waves due to poor radio wave conditions. Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN router, or remove obstacles to improve visibility, and connect again. Install the unit away from microwave ovens or other access points. It is recommended to install the wireless LAN router and the unit in the same room.
- If there is a metallic object near the unit, wireless LAN connection may not be possible because the metal affects the radio wave.
- When other wireless LAN devices are used near the unit, other symptoms may occur, such as interrupted playback and impossible communication. You can avoid those problems by changing the channel of your wireless LAN router. For instructions on changing channels, refer to the instruction manual supplied with your wireless LAN router.
- There may not be enough bandwidth available in wireless LAN. Use a wired LAN for connection.
ZONE B function

Cannot output audio to ZONE B

To output audio to ZONE B, set the audio output destination for "Audio" - "Zone B" on Quick menu to "On(A+B)" or "On(B)" and also set "2. Speaker" - "Configuration" - "Zone 2 Lineout" on the Setup menu to "Zone B". (→p97)

Multi-zone function

Cannot ZONE-output the audio of externally connected AV components

To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 2, connect it to any of HDMI IN1 to IN3 jacks. If the AV component is not equipped with an HDMI jack, use a digital coaxial cable, digital optical cable or analog audio cable. Also, the audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 2 only when the audio is analog or 2ch PCM signal. When the AV component is connected to this unit with an HDMI cable, digital coaxial cable or digital optical cable, change the audio output of the AV component to the PCM output.

When video and audio via HDMI input are output to ZONE 2, set "1. Input/Output Assign" - "TV Out / OSD" - "Zone 2 HDMI" (→p131) to "Use" on the Setup menu.

To output audio from an externally connected AV component to ZONE 3, use an analog audio cable for connection. Also, audio from externally connected AV components can be output to ZONE 3 only when it is an analog audio signal.

Others

If the audio signal is from the NET input selector, the zone output is not possible for DSD audio signals.

Remote Controller

Make sure that the batteries are inserted with the correct polarity.

Insert new batteries. Do not mix different types of batteries, or old and new batteries.

Make sure that the sensor of the main unit is not subjected to direct sunlight or inverter-type fluorescent lights. Relocate it if necessary.

If the main unit is installed in a rack or cabinet with colored-glass doors, or if the doors are closed, the remote controller may not work normally.

Display

The display does not light up

When the Dimmer function is working, the display may go dim. Press the DIMMER button, and change the brightness level of the display. (→p15)
Others

Strange noise can be heard from the unit

- If you have connected another device to the same outlet as this unit, strange noise may occur under the influence of the device. If the symptom is remedied by removing the power plug of the other device from the outlet, use different outlets for this unit and the device.

The message "Noise Error" appears during AccuEQ Room Calibration

- This can be caused by a malfunction in your speaker unit. Check the speaker output, etc.

The measurement results of AccuEQ Room Calibration show different distances to the speakers from the actual ones

- Depending on the speakers you are using, some errors may occur in the measurement results. If this is the case, make the settings in "2. Speaker" - "Distance" in the Setup menu. (→p137)

The measurement results of AccuEQ Room Calibration show that the volume level of the subwoofer has been corrected to the lower limit

- The volume level correction of the subwoofer may not have been completed. Lower the volume of the subwoofer before AccuEQ Room Calibration measurement.
Reducing the Power Consumption in Standby State

When the following functions are enabled, the power consumption in standby state increases. To reduce the power consumption in standby state, check each setting and set the functions to "Off".

- HDMI CEC (→p145)
- HDMI Standby Through (→p145)
- USB Power Out at Standby (→p150)
- Network Standby (→p150)
- Bluetooth Wakeup (→p150)
About HDMI

Compatible functions

HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface) is a digital interface standard for connecting TVs, projectors, Blu-ray Disc/DVD players, digital tuners, and other video components. Several separate video and audio cables have been required to connect AV components so far. With HDMI, a single cable can transmit control signals, digital video and digital audio (2-channel PCM, multichannel digital audio, and multichannel PCM).

HDMI CEC function:
By connecting a device that complies with CEC (Consumer Electronics Control) of the HDMI standard using an HDMI cable, a variety of linked operations between devices are possible. This function enables various linking operations with players, such as switching input selectors interlocking with a player, adjusting the volume of this unit using the remote controller of a TV, and automatically switching this unit to standby when the TV is turned off.

The unit is designed to link with products that comply with the CEC standard, however, linked operation is not always guaranteed with all CEC devices. For linked functions to work properly, do not connect CEC-compliant devices exceeding the connectable number to the HDMI jack as shown below.

- Blu-ray Disc/DVD players: up to 3 units
- Blu-ray Disc/DVD recorders: up to 3 units
- Cable TV tuner, terrestrial digital tuner, and satellite broadcasting tuner: up to 4 units

We have confirmed the operations of the following devices. (As of January 2019) Toshiba brand televisions; Sharp brand televisions; Onkyo and Integra brand RIHD-compatible players; Toshiba brand players and recorders; Sharp brand players and recorders (when used with a Sharp brand television)

ARC (Audio Return Channel):
By connecting an ARC-compliant TV with a single HDMI cable, you can output the audio and video from this unit to the TV, and also input the audio from the TV to this unit.

HDMI Standby Through:
Even if this unit is in standby mode, the input signals from AV components can be transmitted to the TV.

Deep Color:
By connecting devices supporting Deep Color, video signals input from the devices can be reproduced on the TV with even more colors.

x.v.Color™:
This technology reproduces even more realistic colors by expanding the color gamut.

3D:
You can transmit 3D video signals from AV components to the TV.

4K:
This unit supports 4K (3840×2160p) and 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) video signals.

Lip Sync:
Automatically corrects desynchronization between the video and audio signals based on the information from the HDMI Lip-Sync-compatible TV.

Copyright Protection:
The HDMI jack of this unit conforms to the Revision 1.4 and Revision 2.2 standards of the HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection), a copy protection system for digital video signals. Other devices connected to the unit must also conform to the HDCP standards.

Supported Audio Formats

2 ch linear PCM:
32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit

Multi-channel linear PCM:
Maximum 7.1 channels, 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz, 88.2 kHz, 96 kHz, 176.4 kHz, 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Bitstream:

DSD:
Supported sampling rates: 2.8 MHz

Your Blu-ray Disc/DVD player must also support the HDMI output of the above audio formats.

**Supported resolutions**

**HDMI IN1 to IN6:**
- Copyright protection technology: HDCP1.4/HDCP2.2
- Color space (Color Depth):
  - 720×480i 60 Hz, 720×576i 50 Hz, 720×480p 60 Hz, 720×576p 50 Hz, 1920×1080i 50/60 Hz, 1280×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1680×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1920×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 2560×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8/10/12 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
  - 4K (3840×2160p) 50/60 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 50/60 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit), YCbCr4:2:0 (8/10/12 bit)

**AUX INPUT HDMI (front):**
- Copyright protection technology: HDCP1.4/HDCP2.2
- Color space (Color Depth):
  - 720×480i 60 Hz, 720×576i 50 Hz, 720×480p 60 Hz, 720×576p 50 Hz, 1920×1080i 50/60 Hz, 1280×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1680×720p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 1920×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz, 2560×1080p 24/25/30/50/60 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8/10/12 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
  - 4K (3840×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 24/25/30 Hz : RGB/YCbCr4:4:4 (8 bit), YCbCr4:2:2 (12 bit)
  - 4K (3840×2160p) 50/60 Hz, 4K SMPTE (4096×2160p) 50/60 Hz : YCbCr4:2:0 (8 bit)
General Specifications

- **Amplifier Section**
  - **Rated Output Power (FTC) (North American)**
    - With 8 ohm loads, both channels driven, from 20–20,000 Hz; rated 100 watts per channel minimum RMS power, with no more than 0.08% total harmonic distortion from 250 milliwatts to rated output.
  - **Maximum Effective Output Power (North American)**
    - 220 W at 6 ohms, 1 kHz, 1 ch driven of 10% THD
  - **Maximum Effective Output Power (JEITA)**
    - 9 ch × 185 W at 6 ohms, 1 kHz, 1 ch driven of 10% THD (Asian)
  - **Dynamic Power (*)**
    - IEC60268-Short-term maximum output power
      - 250 W (3 Ω, Front)
      - 220 W (4 Ω, Front)
      - 130 W (8 Ω, Front)
  - **THD+N (Total Harmonic Distortion+Noise)**
    - 0.08% (20 Hz - 20,000 Hz, half power)
  - **Input Sensitivity and Impedance**
    - 200 mV/47 kΩ (LINE (RCA))
    - 3.5 mV/47 kΩ (PHONO MM)
  - **Rated RCA Output Level and Impedance**
    - 1 V/470 Ω (SUBWOOFER PRE OUT)
    - 200 mV/470 Ω (ZONE B/ZONE 2 LINE OUT)
  - **Phono Maximum Input Signal Voltage**
    - 70 mV (MM 1 kHz 0.5%)
  - **Frequency Response**
    - 10 Hz - 100 kHz/+1 dB, –3 dB (Direct)
  - **Tone Control Characteristics**
    - ±10 dB, 20 Hz (BASS)
    - ±10 dB, 20 kHz (TREBLE)
  - **Signal to Noise Ratio**
    - 106 dB (IHF-A, LINE IN, SP OUT)
    - 80 dB (IHF-A, PHONO IN, SP OUT)

- **Video Section**
  - **Signal Level**
    - 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Composite Video)
    - 1 Vp-p/75 Ω (Component Video Y)
    - 0.7 Vp-p/75 Ω (Component Video Pb/Pr)
  - **Maximum resolution supported by component video**
    - 480i/576i

- **Tuner Section**
  - **FM Tuning Frequency Range**
    - 87.5 MHz - 107.9 MHz (North American)
    - 87.5 MHz - 108.0 MHz, RDS (Others)
  - **50 dB quieting sensitivity (FM MONO)**
    - 1.0 μV, 11.2 dBf (IHF, 75 Ω)
  - **AM Tuning Frequency Range**
    - 530 kHz - 1710 kHz (North American)
    - 522/530 kHz - 1611/1710 kHz (Others)
  - **Preset Channel**
    - 40

- **Network Section**
  - **Ethernet LAN**
    - 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX
Wireless LAN
- IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac standard
  (Wi-Fi® standard)
- 5 GHz/2.4 GHz band

**BLUETOOTH Section**

Communication system
- BLUETOOTH Specification version 4.2
Frequency band
- 2.4 GHz band
Modulation method
- FHSS (Frequency Hopping Spread Spectrum)
Compatible BLUETOOTH profiles
- A2DP 1.2
- AVRCP 1.3
Supported Codecs
- SBC
- AAC
Transmission range (A2DP)
- 20 Hz - 20 kHz (Sampling frequency 44.1 kHz)
Maximum communication range
- Line of sight approx. 15 m (*)
  * The actual range will vary depending on factors such as obstacles between devices, magnetic fields around a microwave oven, static electricity, cordless phone, reception sensitivity, antenna's performance, operating system, software application, etc.

**General**

Power Supply
- AC 120 V, 60 Hz (North American)
- AC 220 - 240 V, 50/60 Hz (Others)
Power Consumption
- 750 W (North American)
- 760 W (Others)
  - 0.15 W (Full Standby mode)
  - 1.8 W (Network Standby (wired)) (North American)
  - 2.0 W (Network Standby (wired)) (Others)
  - 2.0 W (Network Standby (wireless))
  - 1.8 W (Bluetooth Wakeup) (North American)
  - 2.0 W (Bluetooth Wakeup) (Others)
  - 0.15 W (HDMI CEC)
  - *2.8 W (Equipment with HiNA functionality Standby mode, Network disconnect and Network Standby ON) (North American)
  - 3.0 W (Equipment with HiNA functionality Standby mode, Network disconnect and Network Standby ON) (Others)
  - 2.9 W (Standby mode (ALL ON)) (North American)
  - 3.1 W (Standby mode (ALL ON)) (Others)
  - 75 W (No-sound)
  - 6.2 W (HDMI Standby Through) (North American)
  - 6.7 W (HDMI Standby Through) (Others)
  * This equipment complies with European Commission Regulation (EC) No 1275/2008 as equipment with HiNA functionality.
  If you do not to use the Network function, please set Network Standby setting to Off. You can reduce power consumption under standby mode.

Dimensions (W × H × D)
- 435 mm × 173.5 mm × 379.5 mm
- 17-1/8" × 6-13/16" × 14-15/16"

Weight
- 10.8 kg (23.8 lbs.)

**HDMI**

Input
- IN1 (BD/DVD), IN2 (GAME), IN3 (CBL/SAT), IN4 (STRM BOX), IN5 (PC), IN6, AUX INPUT HDMI (front)
Output
- OUT MAIN (ARC), OUT ZONE 2/SUB
Supported
- Deep Color, x.v.Color™, Lip Sync, Audio Return Channel, 3D, 4K 60 Hz, CEC, Extended Colorimetry (sYCC601, Adobe RGB, Adobe YCC601), Content Type, HDR (HDR10, BT.2020, HLG), Dolby Vision
Audio Format
- Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, DTS, DTS:X, DTS-HD Master Audio, DTS-HD High Resolution Audio, DTS 96/24, DTS-ES, DTS Express, IMAX DTS, IMAX DTS:X , DSD, PCM
HDCP version
2.2

Maximum Video Resolution
4K 60 Hz (YCbCr 4:4:4)

■ Video Inputs

Component
BD/DVD

Composite
IN1 (CBL/SAT), IN2 (STRM BOX)

■ Supported input resolutions

HDMI input
- 4K, 1080p/24, 1080p, 1080i, 720p, 480p/576p
- Signals are output from the HDMI OUT jack of this unit to the TV with the same resolution as the input resolution. When a TV supporting 4K is used, HDMI video signals with 1080p can be output with 4K.

■ Audio Inputs

Digital
- OPTICAL (TV)
- COAXIAL (BD/DVD)

Analog
- BD/DVD, GAME, CBL/SAT, STRM BOX, CD, TV, PHONO, AUX (front)

■ Audio Outputs

Analog
- ZONE B/ZONE 2 LINE OUT
- 2 SUBWOOFER PRE OUT

Speaker Outputs
- FRONT L/R, CENTER, SURROUND L/R, HEIGHT 1 L/R or ZONE 2 L/R, HEIGHT 2 L/R or SURROUND BACK L/R or ZONE 3 L/R (North American models support banana plugs.)

Phones
- PHONES (Front, ø 6.3 mm, 1/4”)

■ Others

Setup Mic : 1 (Front)
USB : 1 (Ver. 2.0, 5 V/1.0 A)
Ethernet : 1
RS232 : 1
IR IN : 1
12V TRIGGER OUT : 1 (100 mA)

Specifications and features are subject to change without notice.

License and Trademark